

Thank you very much for choosing this vehicle.

In order to correctly operate and maintain your vehicle, please take the time to read this manual carefully.

After reading, please leave the manual in the vehicle for future reference. Please leave this manual in the vehicle at the same time of resale, as the new owner will also need to read the information in it.

All the information and specifications in this manual are current at the time of printing.

Remember that authorized service station knows your vehicle best and has factory-trained technicians and OEM parts to guarantee your safety. Do not use non-OEM parts or accessories to modify your vehicle. Modifying will affect the functionality, safety and durability of your vehicle.

According to the specification of equipment and features of your vehicle, some descriptions and illustrations may differ from that on your vehicle.

Any data, descriptions and illustrations provided in this manual cannot be used as the basis for any insurance claim.

We reserves the right to make changes in design and specifications at any time without notice.

All rights reserved. This document should not be reproduced or copied, in whole or in part, without the written permission.

Happy driving!

Version No.: T1EJPHEVLHDOM25ENEU01

Issued January 2024



1	Hood	P.125
2	Position light.....	P.44
	Front turn signal light	P.45
	Daytime running light.....	P.46
3	Front wiper blade	P.42
4	Outside rear view mirror	P.38
5	Side turn signal light	P.45
6	Fuel tank cap.....	P.130
7	Low beam light	P.44
8	High beam light.....	P.44
9	Front fog light	P.46
10	Tire	P.265

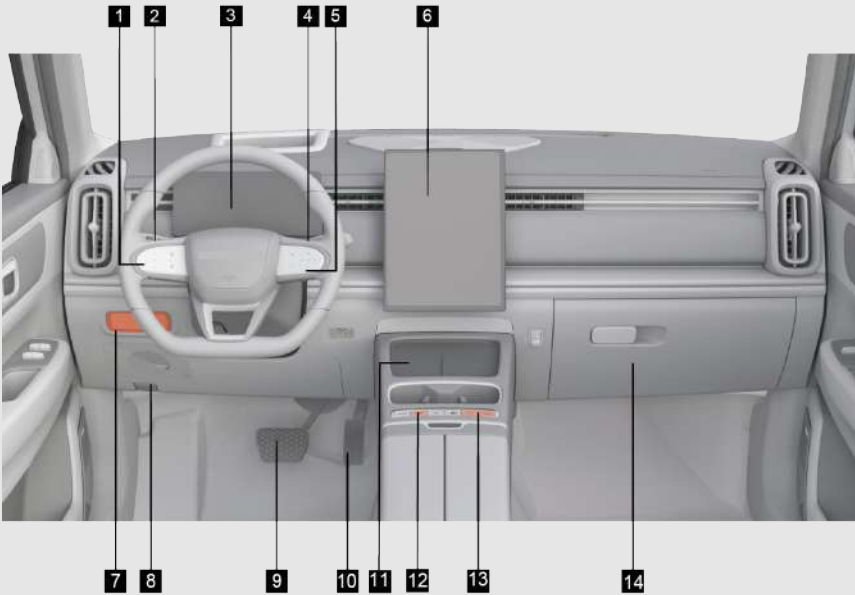
Note: Please refer to the actual vehicle.



1	Power back door	P.126
2	High mounted brake light.....	P.47
3	Rear position light	P.44
4	Rear turn signal light.....	P.45
	Brake light.....	P.47
	Back-up light	P.47
5	Rear towing eyelet	P.250
6	License plate light	P.47
7	Rear fog light.....	P.46

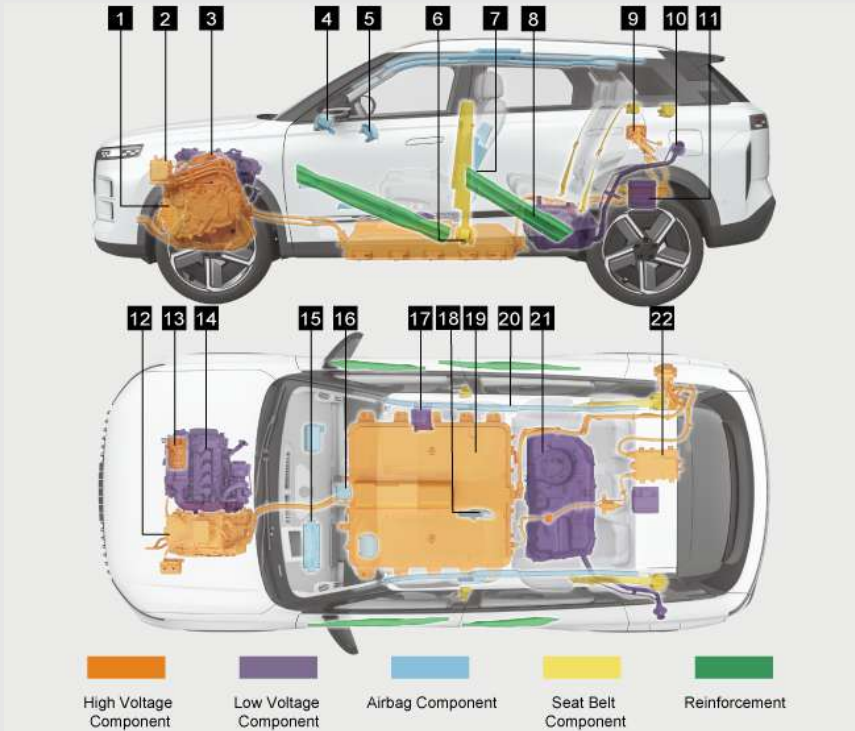
Note: Please refer to the actual vehicle.

Pictorial Index



1	Cruise button.....	P.159
2	Wiper combination switch.....	P.40
3	Instrument cluster	P.26
4	Column Shift Switch	P.137
5	Audio button.....	P.101
6	Audio system.....	P.95
7	Headlight combination switch.....	P.44
8	Hood release lever	P.125
9	Brake pedal	
10	Accelerator pedal	
11	Wireless charging	P.116
12	Drive mode	P.214
13	EV button.....	P.212
	HEV button	P.212
14	Glove box	P.119

Note: The interiors are different depending to the market requirement. Please refer to the actual vehicle.



- | | | |
|-------------------------------------|--|---|
| 1 Hybrid Transmission | 2 High Pressure Heater | 3 High Voltage Power Distribution Unit |
| 4 Front Passenger Airbag | 5 Driver Airbag | 6 Seat Belt Pretensioner (If Equipped) |
| 7 Side Airbag (If Equipped) | 8 Guard Plate | 9 AC Power/DC Power Charging Port |
| 10 Fuel Filler | 11 Battery (12 V) | 12 Front Motor Controller |
| 13 Electric Compressor | 14 Engine | 15 Driver Knee Airbag (If Equipped) |
| 16 Airbag Module | 17 Vehicle Control Unit | 18 Central Airbag (If Equipped) |
| 19 Power Battery | 20 Side Curtain Shield Airbag (If Equipped) | 21 High Pressure Fuel Tank |
| 22 On-board Charger Assembly | | |

Table of Contents

1. INTRODUCTION

1-1. How to Read This Manual	
How to Read This Manual.....	2
Table of Contents	2
Pictorial Index	2
Index	2
1-2. Symbols in the Manual	
Symbols in the Manual	3
1-3. New Vehicle Inspection	
User Registration	
Certificate.....	4
Delivery Card.....	5
1-4. "Face to face" Advisory	
Service Card	
"Face to face" Advisory	
Service Card.....	7
1-5. New Vehicle	
Inspection	
New Vehicle Inspection	11
Delivery Inspection	
Certificate.....	11
1-6. New Vehicle Break-in	
New Vehicle Break-in	12
1-7. How to Save Fuel and	
Extend Life of Vehicle	
How to Save Fuel and	
Extend Life of Vehicle.....	13
1-8. Precautions Before	
Driving Vehicle	
Safety Check	14
Before Starting Engine	14
After Starting Engine.....	15
When Driving	15
Parking Operations.....	15
Parking on Slope	16
Check the Exhaust	
System	17

1-9. Off-road Driving Precautions	
Off-road Driving.....	18
1-10. Precautions When Driving in	
the Rain	
When Driving on	
Slippery Road Surfaces.....	19
Driving Through Water	19
1-11. Winter Driving Precautions	
Winter Driving Tips	20
Driving on Road	
Covered with Ice and	
Snow	21
Tire Chains	21
1-12. Cybersecurity Notice	
Cybersecurity Support	
Service Update or	
Termination Notice.....	23
Cybersecurity Notice for	
Scrappling or Resale	23

2. PREPARATION FOR DRIVING

2-1. Instrument Cluster	
Instrument Cluster View	26
Operating the meter	
control buttons	27
2-2. Operation/Malfunction	
Indicator	
Operation/Malfunction	
Indicator.....	27
2-3. Steering Wheel	
Horn	35
Heated Steering Wheel	
(If Equipped).....	36
Adjusting Steering	
Wheel.....	36
2-4. Rear View Mirror	
Manual Inside Rear	
View Mirror	37

Table of Contents

Automatic Inside Rear View Mirror.....	37	2-9. Child Restraint Systems	
Outside Rear View Mirror.....	38	Child Restraint Systems	65
2-5. Wiper System		Recommended Child Restraint Systems	67
Front Wiper Operation.....	40	Top Tether	68
Wiper Nozzle Heating Function (If Equipped).....	42	Installing Child Restraint Systems.....	70
Wiper Blade Replacement	42	Enabling and Disabling Front Passenger Airbag (If Equipped).....	73
2-6. Lighting System		Reminder for Children Staying in Rear Seat.....	74
Exterior Lighting	44		
Interior Lighting	47	3. INTERIOR FUNCTION	
Headlight Height Adjustment	48	3-1. Key Information	
Follow Me Home Function.....	48	Key Information.....	77
Smart Vehicle Locating Function.....	49	Replacing Key Battery.....	78
Intelligent Headlight Function (IHC) (If Equipped)	49	Effective Range.....	79
Fogging Instructions for Light.....	50	Keyless Entry.....	81
2-7. Seats		Vehicle Security	82
Head Restraints	51	Immobilizer System	83
Front Seats	52	Smart Key Vehicle Locating.....	84
Rear Seat.....	55	Remote Starting for Smart Key	84
Seat Heating Function.....	56	3-2. Doors	
Seat Ventilation Function (If Equipped).....	57	Door Unlocking/Locking	85
Seat Memory Function (If Equipped).....	58	Door Mechanical Switch	87
Seat Portable Entry / Exit Function (If Equipped)	59	Electric Rear Door Child-protector Lock.....	88
2-8. Seat Belts		3-3. Windows	
Seat Belts	59	Power Windows	89
Seat Belt Pretensioner (If Equipped).....	64	Window Remote Control Function.....	90
		Window Jam Protection Function (If Equipped).....	91
		3-4. Power Moon Roof	
		Power Moon Roof.....	92

Table of Contents

Moon Roof Remote Control Function (If Equipped)	94	Coat hooks	118
Moon Roof Jam Protection Function (If Equipped)	94	3-10.Hooks	
3-5. Audio System		Hooks	118
Audio View	95	3-11.Storage Space	
Vehicle Center	96	Storage Space	119
Audio Buttons	101	3-12.Power Outlet	
Voice Recognition Function (If Equipped).....	102	Power Outlet.....	123
Phone-link.....	102	USB Port.....	124
3-6. Air Conditioning System		3-13.Sun Visors , Vanity Mirrors and Ticket Clips	
Automatic Air Conditioning	105	Sun Visors, Vanity Mirrors and TicketClips....	124
Mode Adjustment	110	3-14.Hood	
A/C Setting.....	110	Opening/closing the hood.....	125
Air Outlets Airflow Control.....	111	3-15.Back Door	
Automatic Cabin Ventilation and Automatic Cabin Cleaning (If Equipped)	111	Power Back Door	126
Air Quality Control System (If Equipped)	112	Back Door Emergency Opening.....	130
Air Conditioning Cooling Operation.....	112	3-16.Fuel Tank Cap	
Air Conditioning Heating Operation.....	114	Fuel Tank Cap.....	130
Auxiliary Fascia Armrest Box Cooling Function.....	115	4. DRIVING VEHICLE	
3-7. Fragrance System		4-1. Before Driving Vehicle	
Fragrance System (If Equipped)	115	Inspection and Preparation Before Driving	134
3-8. Wireless Charging		Vehicle Power-on	134
Wireless Charging (If Equipped)	116	Vehicle Power-off	136
3-9. Assist Grips and Coat hooks		4-2. Transmission	
Assist Grips	117	Automatic Transmission	137
		Column Shift Switch.....	138
		4-3. Steering System	
		Electric Power Steering System (EPS)	140

Table of Contents

4-4. Brake System
Electric Parking Brake
System (EPB) 141
AUTO HOLD 143
Brake..... 145

4-5. SRS Airbags
SRS Airbags..... 146

5. DRIVING ASSIST

5-1. Speed Limit Assist System (SLA)
Speed Limit Assist
System (SLA) (If
Equipped) 158

5-2. Cruise System
Cruise Control System
(If Equipped)..... 159
Adaptive Cruise Control
System (ACC) (If
Equipped) 160
Active Speed Limit
(ASL) (If Equipped)..... 167
Intelligent Speed
Control System (SCF)
(If Equipped)..... 168
Intelligent Speed
Control System (ISC) (If
Equipped) 169

5-3. Hill Descent Control
System (HDC)
Hill Descent Control
System (HDC) (If
Equipped) 170

5-4. Lane Departure
Warning System (LDW)
Lane Departure
Warning System (LDW)
(If Equipped)..... 171

5-5. Lane Departure Prevention
System (LDP)
Lane Departure
Prevention System
(LDP) (If Equipped)..... 173

5-6. Emergency Lane
Keeping (ELK) System
Emergency Lane
Keeping (ELK) System
(If Equipped)..... 175

5-7. Blind Spot Detection
(BSD) System
Blind Spot Detection
(BSD) System (If
Equipped) 176
Rear Cross Traffic Alert
(RCTA) System (If
Equipped) 178
Rear Cross Traffic
Braking (RCTB) System
(If Equipped)..... 178
Door Open Warning
System (DOW)..... 179
Rear Collision Warning
System (RCW)(If
Equipped) 180

5-8. Automatic Emergency
Braking System (AEB) /
Front Collision Warning
System (FCW)
Automatic Emergency
Braking System (AEB) /
Front Collision Warning
System (FCW) (If
Equipped) 181

5-9. Traffic Jam Assist
System (TJA) / Integrated
Cruise Assist System (ICA)
Traffic Jam Assist
System (TJA) /
Integrated Cruise Assist

Table of Contents

System (ICA) (If Equipped)	184	5-18. Braking Force Control System	
5-10. Intelligent Avoidance System		Electronic Stability Program System (ESP) ...	202
Intelligent Avoidance System (If Equipped)	186	Anti-lock Brake System (ABS)	204
5-11. Drive Away Information System		Extended Function	206
Drive Away Information System (If Equipped)	187	5-19. Plug-in Hybrid Electric Vehicle System (PHEV)	
5-12. Tire Pressure Monitoring System (TPMS)		Power Battery	207
Tire Pressure Monitoring System (- TPMS) (If Equipped)	187	New Energy	210
5-13. Driver Monitoring System		Energy Flow	210
Driver Monitoring System (DMS) (If Equipped)	190	Energy Recovery Intensity	211
5-14. Parking Assist System		Operating Mode	212
Panoramic View Monitor System (If Equipped)	191	Charging Device	217
Parking Radar System	195	Charging Method	220
5-15. Multi-Collision Brake System (MCB)		AC charging socket electronic lock	224
Multi-Collision Brake System (MCB) (If Equipped)	197	Emergency Unlocking of Electronic Lock (Only for AC Charging)	225
5-16. Head Up Display (HUD) System		Charging Precautions	225
Head Up Display (HUD) System (If Equipped)	198	Safety Warning for Charging	227
5-17. Driving Recorder (DVR)		External Discharging Device	228
Driving Recorder (DVR) (If Equipped)	199	External Discharging Method	228
		Discharging Precautions	231
		Safety Warning for Discharging	232
		5-20. Data Privacy	
		Driver Drowsiness and Attention Warning (DDAW)	232
		Advanced Driver Assistance System (ADAS)	233
		Emergency call (eCall)	233

Table of Contents

6. IN CASE OF AN EMERGENCY

- 6-1. Emergency Call Function
 - ECALL (If Equipped) 236
- 6-2. Basic Knowledge of Vehicle Emergency
 - Hazard Light 236
 - Reflective Strip 237
 - Warning Triangle 237
 - Spare Tools (If Equipped) 238
- 6-3. Vehicle Emergency Handling
 - If You Have a Flat Tire (- Tire Repair Liquid) 239
 - If You Have a Flat Tire While Driving (Tire Replacement) (If equipped) 241
 - If Engine Coolant Temperature is High 246
 - If Battery is Flat 246
 - If Your Vehicle Cannot Start Normally 249
- 6-4. Towing
 - Towing Vehicle 250
 - Installing Towing Eyelet ... 251
 - Emergency Towing 252
- 6-5. Fuse
 - Fuse Box 253
 - Checking Fuse 254
 - Replacing Fuse 254

7. MAINTENANCE

- 7-1. Repair and Maintenance
 - Repair and Maintenance 258
 - Authorized Service Station is at Your Service 258

- Reading Vehicle Identification Code Information 259
- Safety Check 259

7-2. Normal Maintenance

- Normal Maintenance 260
- Checking Oil Level 261
- Checking Transmission Fluid Level 262
- Checking Brake Fluid Level 262
- Checking Coolant Level 263
- Checking Radiator and Condenser 264
- Checking Drive Belt 265
- Checking Tires 265
- Tire Rotation 267
- Checking Battery 267
- Checking Air Conditioning Filter 268
- Checking Windshield Washer Fluid 268
- Checking Wiper Blades ... 269

7-3. Regular Maintenance

- First Maintenance Information 270
- Maintenance Schedule ... 271
- Technical Data 279

8. SPECIFICATION

8-1. Label Location

- Vehicle Identification Number (VIN) 282
- Vehicle Product Label 283
- Engine Number 283
- Microwave Window 283

8-2. Vehicle Specifications

- Vehicle Dimensions 284
- Vehicle Type 285
- Vehicle Weight 285
- Vehicle Performance 286
- Drive Motor 286

Table of Contents

Engine Performance	287	Vehicle Components That Are	
Fuel System	287	Not Included in the Vehicle	
Suspension System	288	Size.....	291
Power Battery	288	Your Rights.....	292
Battery.....	288	Contact Us	292
Wheel Alignment	289		
Wheels and Tires	289		
Light Bulb Specification ...	290		

ALPHABETICAL INDEX

1-1. How to Read This Manual	Before Starting Engine..... 14
How to Read This Manual2	After Starting Engine..... 15
Table of Contents2	When Driving..... 15
Pictorial Index.....2	Parking Operations..... 15
Index.....2	Parking on Slope..... 16
1-2. Symbols in the Manual	Check the Exhaust System 17
Symbols in the Manual3	
1-3. New Vehicle Inspection	1-9. Off-road Driving Precautions
User Registration Certificate4	Off-road Driving 18
Delivery Card5	1-10. Precautions When Driving in the Rain
1-4. "Face to face" Advisory Service Card	When Driving on Slippery Road Surfaces..... 19
"Face to face" Advisory Service Card7	Driving Through Water 19
1-5. New Vehicle Inspection	1-11. Winter Driving Precautions
New Vehicle Inspection 11	Winter Driving Tips 20
Delivery Inspection Certificate 11	Driving on Road Covered with Ice and Snow 21
1-6. New Vehicle Break-in	Tire Chains..... 21
New Vehicle Break-in..... 12	1-12. Cybersecurity Notice
1-7. How to Save Fuel and Extend Life of Vehicle	Cybersecurity Support Service Update or Termination Notice 23
How to Save Fuel and Extend Life of Vehicle 13	Cybersecurity Notice for Scrapping or Resale 23
1-8. Precautions Before Driving Vehicle	
Safety Check..... 14	

1. INTRODUCTION

1-1. How to Read This Manual

How to Read This Manual

There are three ways for you to find the information you need in this manual. Here is a brief introduction of each one.

Table of Contents

The main Table of Contents will tell you which chapter of the Owner's Manual contains the information you need and what page to find it on.

Pictorial Index

The Pictorial Index is a helpful tool to find the required information quickly, especially if you are not familiar with the component name.

Index

This is the fastest method for you to find the information you need. The index contains a complete listing of all the important vehicle terminologies.

1-2. Symbols in the Manual

Symbols in the Manual

The following symbols are used in this manual to draw your attention to particularly important information. In order to minimize the risks as much as possible, please read the instructions on these symbols carefully before driving, and make sure to follow them.

 **WARNING**

Indicates a potentially hazardous situation which, if not avoided, may result in damage to your vehicle, personal injury or even death.

 **CAUTION**

Indicates a potentially hazardous situation which, if not avoided, may result in damage to your vehicle and its equipment, reducing the vehicle's life span.

 **ENVIRONMENTAL PROTECTION**

Indicates that waste must be handled or disposed of according to local environmental regulations to avoid any contamination.

 **READ**

Indicates that the relevant chapter in this manual must be read before any operation.

WARNING and CAUTION relating to personal safety and vehicle safety in this manual are very important. Make sure everyone in the vehicle follows these instructions carefully in order to both enjoy your driving experience and to keep your vehicle in optimum condition.

1. INTRODUCTION

1-3. New Vehicle Inspection

Prior to your purchase, authorized service station has inspected your vehicle according to the regulations. The dealership will record the delivery date and affix its official seal to the User Registration Certificate. Before you sign the User Registration Certificate, the authorized dealer will provide you with instructions regarding your vehicle's overall performance and some basic knowledge about its features and regular operation according to the Vehicle Delivery Card.

User Registration Certificate

Model Code	
Vehicle Identification Number (VIN)	
Engine Number or Transmission Number	
Vehicle Registration Number	
Seal of Dealer:	
Signature of Dealer:	
Delivery Date	
User	
Address	
E-mail	
Telephone	
Have provided and explained the following items for me: <ul style="list-style-type: none">• VEHICLE• OWNER'S MANUAL• PRE-DELIVERY INSPECTION	
Signature of User:	
Signature of Dealer:	

Delivery Card

Category	No.	Items	Whether Pass Inspection and Explain Clearly	
			YES <input type="checkbox"/>	NO <input type="checkbox"/>
Vehicle Performance	1	Engine	YES <input type="checkbox"/>	NO <input type="checkbox"/>
	2	Engine oil, brake fluid, power steering fluid (if equipped), coolant, windshield washer fluid	YES <input type="checkbox"/>	NO <input type="checkbox"/>
	3	VIN code, engine number and nameplate etc.	YES <input type="checkbox"/>	NO <input type="checkbox"/>
	4	Whole set of vehicle keys	YES <input type="checkbox"/>	NO <input type="checkbox"/>
	5	All lights of vehicle	YES <input type="checkbox"/>	NO <input type="checkbox"/>
	6	Windshield and painted surfaces	YES <input type="checkbox"/>	NO <input type="checkbox"/>
	7	Speedometer, tachometer and instrument cluster LCD display	YES <input type="checkbox"/>	NO <input type="checkbox"/>
	8	Tires, spare tires, spare tools and Owner's Manual	YES <input type="checkbox"/>	NO <input type="checkbox"/>
	9	Seats, seat belts, A/C switches and outlets, glove box and sun visors	YES <input type="checkbox"/>	NO <input type="checkbox"/>
	10	Windows, rear view mirrors, windshield wipers, windshield washers, battery, reversing radar system, horns, moon roof (if equipped), audio device and antenna	YES <input type="checkbox"/>	NO <input type="checkbox"/>

1. INTRODUCTION

Category	No.	Items	Whether Pass Inspection and Explain Clearly	
Basic Knowledge About Operation	1*	Unleaded gasoline with an octane number of 91 or higher	YES <input type="checkbox"/>	NO <input type="checkbox"/>
		Unleaded gasoline with an octane number of 92 or higher	YES <input type="checkbox"/>	NO <input type="checkbox"/>
		Unleaded gasoline with an octane number of 95 or higher	YES <input type="checkbox"/>	NO <input type="checkbox"/>
		E22-E100	YES <input type="checkbox"/>	NO <input type="checkbox"/>
	2	Normal operation during the break-in period	YES <input type="checkbox"/>	NO <input type="checkbox"/>
	3	Operation of all the vehicle lights	YES <input type="checkbox"/>	NO <input type="checkbox"/>
	4	Understanding warning lights and indicator lights	YES <input type="checkbox"/>	NO <input type="checkbox"/>
	5	Correct time/mileage of the maintenance schedule	YES <input type="checkbox"/>	NO <input type="checkbox"/>
	6	Vehicle maintenance in winter/summer	YES <input type="checkbox"/>	NO <input type="checkbox"/>
	7	Thorough understanding of the cooling system and normal usage of the coolant	YES <input type="checkbox"/>	NO <input type="checkbox"/>
	8	Correct operation of air conditioning	YES <input type="checkbox"/>	NO <input type="checkbox"/>
	9	Precautions during starting the vehicle	YES <input type="checkbox"/>	NO <input type="checkbox"/>
	10	Correct operation of audio system	YES <input type="checkbox"/>	NO <input type="checkbox"/>
11	Correct usage of moon roof (if equipped)	YES <input type="checkbox"/>	NO <input type="checkbox"/>	
Signature of Sales Clerk:		Date:		
Signature of User:		Date:		

*: Please use the fuel recommended by authorized dealers.

1-4. "Face to face" Advisory Service Card

"Face to face" Advisory Service Card

authorized service station will provide a dedicated service advisor when you purchase your vehicle. If you have any questions concerning your vehicle, please consult the dealership.

Sheet One (for User)

Name of User:	Date of Purchase:
Sales & Servicing Department:	Model:
Vehicle Identification Number (VIN):	
The following items should be confirmed by the user:	
1. Vehicle Delivery and Inspection (Mark a " √ " for " Yes " and a " × " for Other Conditions):	
<input type="checkbox"/>	Have introduced the basic operation of the vehicle to the user and performed the delivery inspection.
<input type="checkbox"/>	Have explained the warranty policies to the user.
<input type="checkbox"/>	Have explained the precautions of driving to the user.
<input type="checkbox"/>	Have explained the importance of regular maintenance and the maintenance interval time/mileage to the user.
<input type="checkbox"/>	Have explained the importance of having regular maintenance/vehicle repair performed at authorized service station to the user.
<input type="checkbox"/>	Have delivered the Owner's Manual to the users and reminded them to read it.
<input type="checkbox"/>	Have informed the service hotline function and how to use it.
2. "Face to face" Advisory Service Mode Introduction (Mark a " √ " for " Yes " and a " × " for Other Conditions):	
<input type="checkbox"/>	If you have questions or concerns, please contact a service advisor.
<input type="checkbox"/>	The service advisor is the only person authorized by the dealer to answer the user's questions.
<input type="checkbox"/>	Have assigned a dedicated service advisor to each user for "Person to- Person" service.
<input type="checkbox"/>	If the user is not fully satisfied with the service advisor, the user can select another service advisor.
The following items should be confirmed by the user:	
3. Main Work Introduction on Service advisor (Mark a " √ " for " Yes " and a " × " for Other Conditions):	

1. INTRODUCTION

<input type="checkbox"/>	Service reception during service and maintenance.
<input type="checkbox"/>	Regular maintenance reminders.
<input type="checkbox"/>	Answer the service/maintenance consultation.
<input type="checkbox"/>	Service/maintenance reservation acceptance.
<input type="checkbox"/>	Annual inspection reminders/acceptance.
<input type="checkbox"/>	Regular check up and service reminders and holiday greetings.
<input type="checkbox"/>	Other concerns from the user.
4. "Face to face" Advisory Service Relationship Establishment:	
Service advisor business card	
Signature of User/Date:	
Signature of Service Advisor/Date:	

Sheet Two (for Sales & Servicing Department)

Name of User:	Date of Purchase:
Sales & Servicing Department:	Model:
Vehicle Identification Number (VIN):	
The following items should be confirmed by the user:	
1. Vehicle Delivery and Inspection (Mark a " √ " for " Yes " and a " × " for Other Conditions):	
<input type="checkbox"/>	Have introduced the basic operation of the vehicle to the user and performed the delivery inspection.
<input type="checkbox"/>	Have explained the warranty policies to the user.
<input type="checkbox"/>	Have explained the precautions of driving to the user.
<input type="checkbox"/>	Have explained the importance of regular maintenance and the recommended interval time/mileage for regular maintenance to the user.
<input type="checkbox"/>	Have explained to the user the importance of having regular maintenance or vehicle repairs done at authorized service station.
<input type="checkbox"/>	Have delivered the Owner's Manual to the users and reminded them to read it.
<input type="checkbox"/>	Have informed the the user about the service hotline function and how to use it.
2. "Face to face" Advisory Service Mode Introduction (Mark a " √ " for " Yes " and a " × " for Other Conditions):	
<input type="checkbox"/>	If you have any questions or concerns, ask your service advisor.
<input type="checkbox"/>	The service advisor is the only person authorized by the dealer to answer the user's questions.
<input type="checkbox"/>	Have assigned a dedicated service advisor to each user for "face to face" service.
<input type="checkbox"/>	If the user is not fully satisfied with the service advisor, the user can request another service advisor.
The following items should be confirmed by the user:	
3. Main Work Introduction on Service Advisor (Mark a " √ " for " Yes " and a " × " for Other Conditions):	
<input type="checkbox"/>	Service reception during service and maintenance.
<input type="checkbox"/>	Regular maintenance reminders.
<input type="checkbox"/>	Answer the service/maintenance consultation.
<input type="checkbox"/>	Service/maintenance appointment.

1. INTRODUCTION

<input type="checkbox"/>	Annual inspection reminders.
<input type="checkbox"/>	Regular check up and service reminders and holiday greetings.
<input type="checkbox"/>	Other concerns from the user.
4. "Face to face" Advisory Service Relationship Establishment:	
Service advisor business card	
Signature of User/Date:	
Signature of Service Advisor/Date:	

1-5. New Vehicle Inspection

New Vehicle Inspection

Before delivering the vehicle to you, the Sales & Servicing department of your dealership has inspected it according to regulations. The Sales & Servicing department of Auto should fill the delivery date in the inspection certificate and affix the official seal of dealer unit.

The dealership will familiarize you with your vehicle and verify it via the "- Delivery Card" which will be signed by both parties.

Delivery Inspection Certificate

In witness whereof, this vehicle has passed delivery inspection as regulated, and quality meets technical specification.

Vehicle Model	
Vehicle Identification Number (VIN)	
Engine Number or Transmission Number	
Vehicle Registration Number	
Official Seal of Sales & Servicing Department:	
Signature of Servicer:	
Delivery Date	
User	
Address	
E-mail	
Telephone	
Have provided and explained the following items for me:	
<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • VEHICLE • OWNER'S MANUAL • PRE-DELIVERY INSPECTION 	
Signature of User:	
Signature of Servicer:	

1. INTRODUCTION

1-6. New Vehicle Break-in

New Vehicle Break-in

Frictional resistance between the moving parts of a new vehicle is much more likely in the initial use of the vehicle than later on. Therefore, the initial use can have a greater impact on the vehicle's lifespan, operational reliability and economy. We advise that the use of a new vehicle must strictly follow the following guidelines and that the break-in period would be on average the first 3000 km driven.

■ Driving regulations of new vehicle break-in period

Within the first 1,000 km:

- Avoid driving at full speed;
- Driving speed should not exceed 100 km/h;
- Avoid driving at maximum speed in each gear.

Within the first 1,000 - 1,500 km:

- Driving speed can be gradually increased to the highest speed;
- Engine speed can be gradually increased to the maximum allowable speed.

■ Driving recommendations after break-in period

- When driving a vehicle, the maximum speed which engine allows to run in short time is 6,000 r/min. When shifting manually, shift to nearby high gear while the tachometer pointer reaches the red indicator zone.
- Engine speed should not be too low while driving, so it will be necessary to shift to the appropriate gear. Do not run the engine at maximum speed in neutral or other gears if the engine is cold.

■ Tire and wheel break-in recommendations:

When starting to use new tires, the best adhesion is not available. Therefore, new tires also need break-in, so the vehicle should be driven slowly and especially carefully within the first 100 km of driving.

■ Braking system break-in recommendations:

New brake lining also needs break-in. Because the brakes cannot provide the ideal brake friction during the first 200 km. If the braking efficiency is slightly worse at this stage, increase depression force on the pedal appropriately. This condition also applies to the each replacement of braking lining later.



ENVIRONMENTAL PROTECTION

Avoid running engine at unnecessary high speed. Switching to a high gear in time is helpful to save fuel, reduce operation noise and reduce environmental pollution.

1-7. How to Save Fuel and Extend Life of Vehicle

How to Save Fuel and Extend Life of Vehicle

Saving fuel is largely determined by vehicle conditions and driving habit. Do not overuse the vehicle, which also helps to extend vehicle's life.

The followings are specific tips for fuel saving:

1. Make sure to maintain proper tire inflation pressure. Insufficient tire inflation pressure will lead to tire wear and fuel wastage.
2. The vehicle should not be loaded with unnecessary weight. Heavy loads increase the engine load, resulting in high fuel consumption.
3. Avoid warm-up idling for a long time. The vehicle can be driven once the engine runs smoothly. The warm-up time in cold weather will be longer than other seasons.
4. Accelerate slowly and smoothly. Avoid sudden starting.
5. Avoid engine idling for a long time. If you need to park vehicle and wait for a long time, you should turn off the engine and turn it on again later.
6. Avoid out-of-gear or overspeed of engine. Select proper gears according to driving road conditions.
7. Avoid continuous acceleration and deceleration. Stop-and-go driving will waste the fuel.
8. Avoid unnecessary stopping and braking. You should keep a stable speed. Obey the traffic light's instructions while driving and minimize the number of stops, or take full advantage of road without traffic lights to drive vehicle. Maintain a proper driving distance with other vehicles to avoid sudden braking, this will also reduce brake wear.
9. Avoid areas with heavy traffic or traffic jams as much as possible.
10. Do not hold your foot on clutch or brake pedals for a long time. This will cause premature wear, overheating and high fuel consumption.
11. Keep a proper vehicle speed on the motorway. The faster the vehicle's speed, the more fuel consumption. Decreasing vehicle speed will save fuel.
12. Keep proper front wheel alignment. Avoid collision with road curbs and reduce your vehicle speed when driving on rough road surfaces. Improper front wheel alignment will not only quicken tire wear, but also increase engine load.
13. Avoid contacting vehicle chassis with mud, etc.
14. Maintain vehicle in optimal working condition. Dirty air filter, improper valve clearance, dirty spark plugs, dirty oil and grease, brakes without proper adjustment, etc. can reduce engine performance and waste fuel. Regular maintenance will extend your vehicle's life and reduce your driving costs. Your vehicle needs to be serviced more frequently if you regularly drive in severe conditions.

1. INTRODUCTION

CAUTION

Never turn off engine when driving downhill. The power steering system and brake system will not operate normally when engine is not running.

1-8. Precautions Before Driving Vehicle

Safety Check

It is better to do a safety check before driving vehicle. A few minutes of checking can help ensure safe and pleasant driving.

WARNING

If you perform this check in an enclosed garage, make sure there is adequate ventilation.

Before Starting Engine

■ Outside vehicle

1. Tires (including spare tire): Check tire pressure with a tire pressure gauge and carefully check tires for cuts, damage or excessive wear.
2. Wheel bolts: Make sure no wheel bolts are missing or loose.
3. Fluid leaks: After the vehicle has been parked for a while, check underneath for leaking fuel, oil, coolant or other fluids (Water dripping from air conditioning after use is normal).
4. Lights: Make sure the headlights, daytime running lights, brake lights, fog lights, turn signal lights and other lights are working properly.
5. Intake grilles: Remove snow, leaves or other obstructions from the intake grilles in front of windshield.

■ Inside vehicle

1. Spare tools: Make sure you have spare tools, such as jack, wheel bolt wrench and spare tire.
2. Seat belts: Check if the buckles can be fastened securely. Make sure belts are not worn or frayed.
3. Instrument cluster and controls: Make especially sure the malfunction indicator lights, indicator lights, and controls are working properly.
4. Brakes: Make sure the pedal has enough clearance.

■ Engine compartment and engine

1. Spare fuses: Make sure spare fuses are available. All the fuses with amperage ratings designated on the fuse box cover should be provided.
2. Coolant level: Make sure coolant level is proper.

3. Battery and cables: Check for corroded or loose terminals and a cracked case. Check the cables for good condition and connections.
4. Wiring: Check for damaged, loose or broken wires.
5. Fuel lines: Check the lines for leaks or loose connections.

■ Hood

Make sure the hood is locked completely before driving. Otherwise, the hood may tilt up and block front view when vehicle is moving, which could lead to an accident.

After Starting Engine

1. Exhaust system: Listen for any leakage. Repair any leaks immediately if such condition occurs.
2. Engine oil level: Stop vehicle on level ground, turn off engine and wait for 5 minutes, pull out the dipstick to check if the engine oil level is proper.

When Driving

1. Gauges and meters: Make sure the gauges and meters are working properly.
2. Brakes: At a safe place, check that the vehicle does not pull to one side when the brakes are applied.
3. Other abnormal conditions: Check for loose parts and leaks. Listen for abnormal noises.

Parking Operations

Proper parking is an important part of safe driving. Vehicle should be parked in a place with wide road, good view and no impact on traffic. Parking operation steps are as follows:

1. Depress brake pedal until the vehicle is completely stopped.
2. Confirm that the electronic parking is enabled.
3. Move shift lever to "P" position.
4. Turn ENGINE START STOP switch to OFF mode.

CAUTION

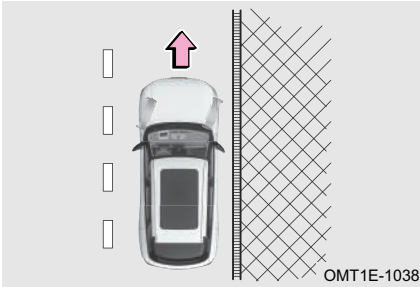
When you leave vehicle, make sure to lock your vehicle and carry the keys with you.

1. INTRODUCTION

Parking on Slope

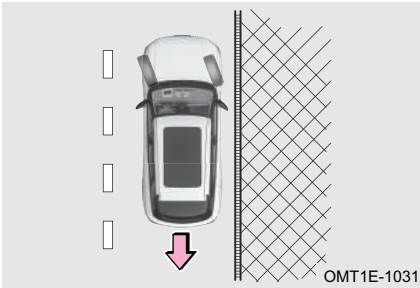
Parking vehicle on a slope is mainly enabled by the force of the parking brake. Failing to apply park brake or any brake malfunction may cause the vehicle to slide down a slope and personal injury or damage to vehicle. When parking on a slope, it is better to face the tires towards one side of vehicle, to prevent vehicle from moving accidentally.

■ Parking on downhill with curb



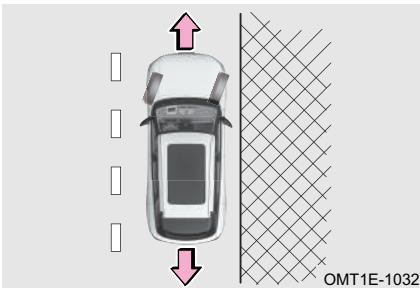
If there is a curb on the roadside, turn the steering wheel to the right to ensure that the front part of the front right wheel is close to or against the curb, to prevent the vehicle from sliding forward down the slope, then apply the parking brake.

■ Parking on uphill with curb



If there is a curb on the roadside, turn the steering wheel to the left to ensure that the rear part of the front right wheel is close to or against the curb, to prevent the vehicle from sliding back down the slope, then apply the parking brake.

■ Parking on uphill or downhill (without curb)



If there is no curb on the roadside, turn the steering wheel hard right to prevent the vehicle driving into the center of the road or sliding down the slope. Turn the steering wheel to the side of the road, so the vehicle is facing away from the center of the road when moving, then apply the parking brake.

■ Carrying passengers

Before driving, make sure all passengers sit in their seats with their seat belts properly fastened. Do not let the passengers sit in the places where there are no seats and seat belts, as they are likely to be seriously injured during a collision.

■ Locking the vehicle

- When leaving the vehicle unattended, carry smart key with you and lock all the doors, even if parking the vehicle in the garage or on the road outside your house.
- Park the vehicle in bright and spacious places as much as possible, and do not expose valuable items.

■ Exhaust gas

- Avoid inhaling the engine exhaust gas. It contains carbon monoxide (CO), which is a harmful, colorless and odorless gas. It can cause unconsciousness or even death after inhaling.
- Make sure the exhaust system has no leakage holes or loose connections. The exhaust system should be checked regularly. If a change in exhaust gas sound is heard, please have the system checked immediately.
- Do not run the engine in a garage or an enclosed area, unless moving the vehicle in or out. The exhaust gas cannot escape, which may cause serious injury.
- Do not stay in a parked vehicle for a long time with the engine running. If it is unavoidable, vehicle should be parked in a spacious area and adjust heating and cooling system to forcibly introduce outside air into vehicle.
- Keep the back door closed while driving. An open or unclosed back door may cause exhaust gas to enter the vehicle.
- To achieve proper operation of vehicle ventilation system, keep intake grilles free of snow, leaves, or other obstructions.
- If you smell exhaust fumes in vehicle, open windows to allow fresh air to enter and check vehicle condition.

■ Check the Exhaust System

The exhaust system should be checked in the following situations:

1. When you smell exhaust fumes;
2. When you notice a changed noise coming from the exhaust system;
3. When exhaust system is damaged due to vehicle collision;
4. When the vehicle is lifted for inspection and repair.

1. INTRODUCTION

1-9. Off-road Driving Precautions

Off-road Driving

Always observe the following precautions to minimize the risk of serious personal injury or damage to your vehicle:

- Be careful when driving off road. Do not drive in dangerous areas.
- Place both hands on the outer ring of the steering wheel when driving off road.
- Always check your brakes for effectiveness immediately after driving on roads covered with sand, mud, shallow water or snow.
- The driver and all passengers should fasten their seat belts whenever vehicle is moving.

WARNING

- After driving on road surfaces covered with tall grass, mud, gravel, sand, rivers, etc., check if there is grass, bush, paper, rags, stone, sand, etc. adhering to or trapped on underbody. Clear off any above materials from the underbody. If driving vehicle with those matters trapped on or adhering to the underbody, a breakdown or fire could occur.
- When driving off road or on rugged terrain, high speed driving, jumping, sharp turning and striking objects, etc. are forbidden. These activities may cause loss of control or vehicle rollover, resulting in death or severe personal injury. You are also risking expensive damage to your vehicle's suspension and chassis.

1-10. Precautions When Driving in the Rain

When Driving on Slippery Road Surfaces

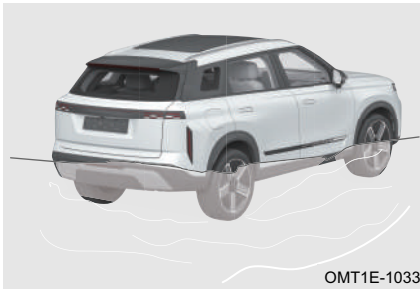
Drive carefully when it is raining, because visibility will be reduced, windows may become fogged-up and roads will be slippery.

- Do not drive at high speed when driving on a motorway in rain, because there may be a layer of water between tires and road surface, preventing steering system and brakes from operating properly.

CAUTION

- Sudden braking, acceleration and steering on slippery road surfaces may cause tire slippage and reduce your ability to control vehicle, resulting in an accident.
- Sudden changes in engine speed, such as sudden braking may cause vehicle to skid, resulting in an accident.
- After driving through a puddle, lightly depress brake pedal to make sure brakes are functioning properly. Wet brake lining may prevent brakes from functioning properly. If brake lining on one side is wet and not functioning properly, steering control may be affected, resulting in an accident.

Driving Through Water



The vehicle could be seriously damaged when driving on a road that has flooded after heavy rain. If driving through water is unavoidable, check the depth of the water and drive slowly and carefully.

1. When you are driving through water, make sure that the engine runs properly and that the steering and braking system works normally. When driving smoothly through water, you should switch to low gear and avoid a sudden depression of the accelerator pedal in order to prevent water from splashing into the engine.
2. Depress and hold accelerator pedal while driving, make sure vehicle has adequate and stable power. You should drive through without half-way stopping, gear shifting or sharp turning.
3. If vehicle stalls in water, never restart it immediately to prevent further damage to engine. The vehicle should be towed to a safe place where the water is shallow to find out the cause.

1. INTRODUCTION

CAUTION

- Never drive through water that is deeper than wheel rim.
- Water intrusion into engine can cause it to stall, or cause serious internal damage.
- Water can wash the grease from the wheel bearing, causing rusting and premature abrasion.
- Driving through water may cause damage to your vehicle drive train components. Always visually inspect your vehicle's fluids (e.g. engine oil, transmission fluid, etc.) for signs of leakage after driving through water. Do not continue to operate vehicle if any fluid leaks, as this may result in further damage.
- Vehicle traction and braking performance will decrease while driving through water. The braking distance will increase. Sand and mud that have accumulated around the brake discs may affect the braking efficiency and may damage the brake system components. After driving through water, slightly depress the brake pedal several times to dry the brakes off.

1-11. Winter Driving Precautions

Winter Driving Tips

- **Coolant:** Make sure that coolant has anti-freezing function. Only use recommended coolant. More details about coolant type selection.
- **Battery and cables:** Low temperature will decrease power of battery. Sufficient power should be stored in battery for starting in winter.
- **Oil:** In winter, it is recommended to choose appropriate engine oil according to the local temperature condition. The lower viscosity at low temperature, the better fluidity at low temperature, indicating that the lower the ambient temperature at which the oil can be used. More details about oil type selection.
- **Door locks:** Avoid door locks being frozen. Deicing agent or glycerin should be sprayed into door lock holes.
- **Washer fluid:** Use washer fluid containing antifreeze. This product is available at authorized service station and most vehicle component distributors.
- **Mudguards:** Avoid ice and snow accumulation under mudguards. Failure to do so may cause difficult steering. When driving in cold weather, you should often stop vehicle to check for ice and snow accumulation under mudguards. It is recommended that you should take some necessary emergency items with you depending on different driving destinations. Items that need to be put in vehicle: Tire chains, window snow scraper, sand or salt bag, signal flasher, shovel, jumper cables, etc.

⚠ CAUTION

- Do not use water as a substitute for coolant.
- Do not use engine coolant or other alternative washer fluid, otherwise vehicle paint will be damaged.

Driving on Road Covered with Ice and Snow

Rapid acceleration on slippery road surfaces, such as snow or ice covered roads, may cause the rear wheels slipping to right or left. Therefore, please drive at low speed and operate carefully.

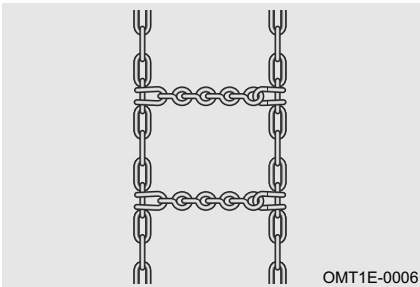
It is possible to build up a layer of water film between the tire and road surface when driving on wet or slushy roads. This may prevent the steering and braking from operating properly. It is recommended that you enable ESP function on this occasion.

■ Driving out silt and ice and snow road

If drive wheel is stuck in silt or ice and snow, please attempt to shake vehicle at low speed and drive forward and backward repeatedly. Shift the shift lever between forward position and reverse position several times and depress accelerator pedal slightly. Avoid shifting the shift lever between forward position and reverse position for a long period of time, as this may cause excessive transmission wear.

Tire Chains

Purchase a set of tire chains that match size of the vehicle tires. Pay attention to the following precautions when installing and removing chains:



1. Follow local regulations when using chains;
2. Install and remove tire chains in a safe location;
3. Install tire chains by following the instructions provided;
4. Follow local regulations when using chains;

1. INTRODUCTION

5. It is recommended to use the beef tendon chains or rubber chains with a thickness not exceeding 12 mm, otherwise, tires, rims, drive system, brake system and wheel guard plates may be damaged. Vehicle damages resulting from improper use of chains are not covered by warranty;
6. Please consult authorized service station for details about wheels, tire size.

CAUTION

Observe the following precautions to reduce the risk of accidents. Failure to do so may result in the vehicle unable to be driven safely, and may cause death or serious injury.

- Regulations regarding the use of tire chains vary depending on location and type of road. Always check local regulations before installing tire chains;
- Be sure to use chains that are suitable for your vehicle. Installing chain will affect vehicle handling, please drive carefully. Using improper chains or improper installing of chains may cause an accident and lead to injuries;
- Please follow the instructions provided by the manufacturer of the chains to install and remove chains, park the vehicle in a safe place before installation and removal. Be sure to turn off the engine before installing chains (automatic transmission is in P position), place the traffic warning signs if necessary;
- Do not drive vehicle at more than 30 km/h when chains are installed on vehicle, or refer to the vehicle speed limit specified by the manufacturer of chains, whichever is lower. It should avoid dangerous road conditions such as bumps, potholes, sharp turns etc. when installing chains, do not turn steering wheel sharply, lock brake urgently, accelerate or decelerate suddenly etc.

1-12. Cybersecurity Notice

Cybersecurity Support Service Update or Termination Notice

The company has provided cybersecurity support services in the corresponding software and equipment of the Internet of Vehicles service, and regularly or irregularly updates or terminates this service.

The scrapped vehicle will stop providing Network Security Services; Network Security Services will maintain essential service after the vehicle is discontinued for 10 years.

We can notify customers through website announcements, emails, in-vehicle systems, mobile phone text messages, voice calls, etc. according to the specific content of the notification.

Email, SMS, and voice calls will be sent to the email address and mobile phone listed in the customer's account registration information.

Cybersecurity Notice for Scrapping or Resale

Before you resell or scrap the vehicle, that is, when you no longer hold the vehicle, you should clear the personal information in the vehicle terminal by yourself.

The company does not assume any responsibility if the personal information of the vehicle terminal is leaked to a third party due to improper operation.

Our franchised dealers are familiar with the relevant regulations and can provide you with consulting services.

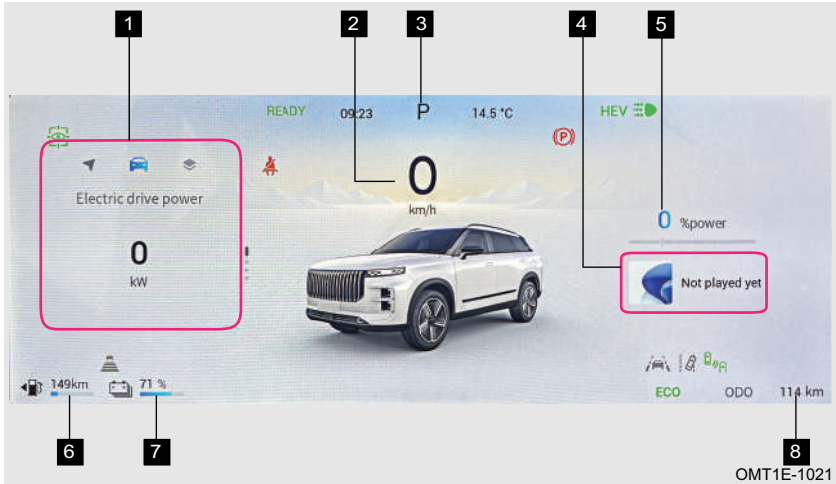
2-1. Instrument Cluster	Smart Vehicle Locating Function	49
Instrument Cluster View	Intelligent Headlight Function (IHC) (If Equipped)	49
Operating the meter control buttons	Fogging Instructions for Light.....	50
2-2. Operation/Malfunction Indicator	2-7. Seats	
Operation/Malfunction Indicator	Head Restraints	51
2-3. Steering Wheel	Front Seats	52
Horn.....	Rear Seat	55
Heated Steering Wheel (If Equipped).....	Seat Heating Function	56
Adjusting Steering Wheel	Seat Ventilation Function (If Equipped).....	57
2-4. Rear View Mirror	Seat Memory Function (If Equipped)	58
Manual Inside Rear View Mirror	Seat Portable Entry / Exit Function (If Equipped).....	59
Automatic Inside Rear View Mirror.....	2-8. Seat Belts	
Outside Rear View Mirror	Seat Belts	59
2-5. Wiper System	Seat Belt Pretensioner (If Equipped)	64
Front Wiper Operation	2-9. Child Restraint Systems	
Wiper Nozzle Heating Function (If Equipped).....	Child Restraint Systems	65
Wiper Blade Replacement	Recommended Child Restraint Systems	67
2-6. Lighting System	Top Tether.....	68
Exterior Lighting.....	Installing Child Restraint Systems	70
Interior Lighting.....	Enabling and Disabling Front Passenger Airbag (If Equipped).....	73
Headlight Height Adjustment.....	Reminder for Children Staying in Rear Seat.....	74
Follow Me Home Function		

2. PREPARATION FOR DRIVING

2-1. Instrument Cluster

Please refer to the actual vehicle for all display images.

Instrument Cluster View



1 Information display area: Short press "○" button on steering wheel to call out information display area; Short press "<" / ">" button on steering wheel to circularly switch among navigation - driving information - theme.

Driving information: Short press "^" / "∨" button on steering wheel to circularly switch among recent 50 km - since reset - tire pressure display - electric drive power.

Since reset: Long press "○" button on steering wheel to reset the average speed, trip mileage.

Navigation: Long press "○" button on steering wheel to enter full-screen map.

Theme: Short press "^" / "∨" button on steering wheel to circularly switch the theme. Short press "○" button on steering wheel to select the corresponding theme.

2 Vehicle speed display: Driving speed (unit: km/h).

3 Gear position information: The selected gear position information.

4 Multimedia information: Media music and radio information.

5 Instantaneous power consumption: The ratio of the current output electric drive power to the maximum electric drive power (unit: %).

6 Fuel level display: Current remaining fuel in fuel tank and driving mileage.

7 Power display: The current remaining SOC of power battery.

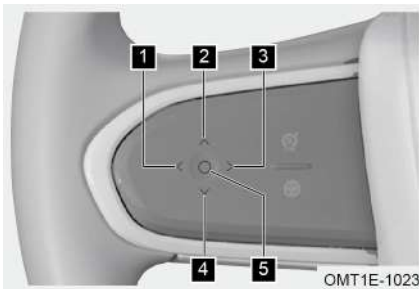
8 Mileage display: Driving mileage of the vehicle (common unit: km).

 READ

- Battery level display can be set to Battery Level/Standard Mileage/Dynamic Mileage through Audio System - Vehicle Center - New Energy Screen - Pure Electric Mileage Display.
- Mileage display can be set to Total Distance/HEV Distance/EV Distance through Audio System - Vehicle Center - New Energy Screen - Driving Distance Display.
- When the vehicle is accelerating, braking urgently, turning sharply or driving on a slope, the fuel gauge reading might be inaccurate.
- Speedometer is affected by tire size used in vehicle. Only tires of original size can be used, otherwise it will not indicate the correct speed.

Operating the meter control buttons

When the cruise function is not turned on, the meter can be operated by the following buttons.



- 1 Left adjustment button (if equipped)
- 2 Up adjustment button
- 3 Right adjustment button (if equipped)
- 4 Down adjustment button
- 5 Enter/exit the meter menu

2-2. Operation/Malfunction Indicator










Operation/Malfunction Indicator








The operation indicator is used to alert driver the operating condition of a certain vehicle's system and the corresponding operation indicator will remain on.

Malfunction indicator is used to alert driver that a certain system of the vehicle is malfunctioning, the corresponding malfunction indicator will come on or flash.








When vehicle power is turned to ON mode, some malfunction indicators will come on for a short time, indicating system is performing self-check. If one system malfunction indicator remains on or flashes after starting the engine, please contact authorized service station for inspection and repair immediately.







2. PREPARATION FOR DRIVING

Item	Indicator	Description
Daytime running light indicator		Daytime running light indicator comes on when engine is started.
Position light indicator		When the position lights are turned on, the indicator comes on.
Turn signal indicator		When the left or right turn signal lights are turned on, the corresponding turn signal indicator flashes. When hazard light switch is turned on, both left and right turn signal indicators will flash simultaneously.
Headlight high beam indicator		When the high beam lights are turned on or when the high beam lights flash, the indicator comes on.
Front fog light indicator		When Front fog light is turned on, the rear fog light indicator will come on.
Rear fog light indicator		When rear fog light is turned on, the rear fog light indicator will come on.
Driving ready indicator	READY	Remaining on indicates that vehicle is in READY state and vehicle can start off.
Intelligent headlight (IHC) indicator		This indicator is used to indicate that the vehicle's automatic headlights are in operating condition currently.
Intelligent headlight (IHC) malfunction indicator		This indicator is used to indicate that the vehicle's automatic headlights are malfunctioning currently. Please go to authorized service station for inspection and repair as soon as possible.
Front seat belt indicator		This indicator is used to alert the driver that the driver seat belt and/or front passenger seat belt is not buckled or not fastened firmly. Wear seat belt and drive safely.








Rear seat belt indicator		<p>This indicator is used to alert the driver that the rear seat belt is not buckled or not fastened firmly. Wear seat belt and drive safely.</p> <p>Note: the red indicator light turns on when the corresponding seat belt is not fastened, and turns off when the corresponding seat belt is fastened.</p>
Brake system malfunction indicator		<p>This indicator is used to alert the driver that brake fluid level is low or brake system is malfunctioning. Please go to authorized service station for inspection and repair immediately.</p>
Electric Parking Brake (EPB) system indicator		<p>This indicator comes on to indicate that the vehicle's EPB is in operating condition currently.</p> <p>The indicator flashes during sudden braking, it is normal and does not need to be dealt with. If it flashes in other cases, it indicates that the system is malfunctioning. Please go to authorized service station for inspection and repair as soon as possible.</p>
Electric Parking Brake (EPB) system malfunction indicator		<p>This indicator is used to alert the driver that EPB is malfunctioning. Please drive slowly to authorized service station for inspection and repair as soon as possible.</p>
Automatic Parking System (AUTO HOLD) indicator		<p>This indicator is used to indicate that the vehicle is in automatic parking condition currently.</p>
Automatic Parking System (AUTO HOLD) malfunction indicator		<p>This indicator is used to alert the driver that AUTO HOLD is malfunctioning. Please drive slowly to authorized service station for inspection and repair as soon as possible.</p>
Anti-lock Brake System (ABS) malfunction indicator		<p>This indicator is used to alert the driver that Anti-lock Brake System (ABS) is malfunctioning. Please drive slowly to authorized service station for inspection and repair as soon as possible.</p>












2. PREPARATION FOR DRIVING

Electronic Stability Program (ESP) system indicator		<p>This indicator flashes to indicate that the vehicle's Electronic Stability Control (ESP) system is in operating condition currently.</p> <p>This indicator comes on to alert the driver that Electronic Stability Program (ESP) system is malfunctioning. Please go to authorized service station for inspection and repair as soon as possible.</p>
ESP OFF indicator		When ESP function is turned off, ESP OFF indicator will come on, indicating that Electronic Stability Program (ESP) system is in disabled condition.
Low fuel level warning indicator		This indicator is used to alert the driver that vehicle is running out of fuel. Please add fuel as soon as possible.
Airbag (SRS) malfunction indicator		This indicator is used to alert the driver that Airbag (SRS) system is malfunctioning. Please go to authorized service station for inspection and repair as soon as possible.
Charging system indicator		This indicator is used to indicate the operating condition of charging system. If this indicator does not come on when vehicle power is turned to ON mode, or comes on after engine starts, please go to authorized service station for inspection and repair as soon as possible.
Engine warming up indicator		This indicator is used to alert the driver that when engine coolant temperature is too low, engine is in warming up currently. After coolant temperature rises, the indicator goes off to indicate that the engine warm-up is completed currently.
High coolant temperature warning indicator		This indicator is used to alert the driver that engine coolant temperature is high. Drive vehicle to a safe area and stop, turn vehicle power to OFF mode after idling for several minutes. Please go to authorized service station for inspection and repair immediately.














Tire pressure monitoring system malfunction indicator		This indicator is used to indicate that tire pressure is incorrect. Please check if tire pressure is too low or if temperature is too high. If tire pressure is normal, please go to authorized service station for inspection and repair as soon as possible.
EPC malfunction indicator	EPC	This indicator is used to alert the driver that engine system is malfunctioning. Please go to authorized service station for inspection and repair immediately.
Engine malfunction indicator		This indicator is used to alert the driver that engine is malfunctioning. Please go to authorized service station for inspection and repair immediately.
Transmission malfunction indicator		This indicator is used to alert the driver that transmission system is malfunctioning. Please go to authorized service station for inspection and repair immediately.
EPS malfunction indicator		This indicator remains on to indicate that EPS is malfunctioning currently.
Steering angle initialization incomplete indicator		This indicator remains on to indicate that EPS is not initialized or calibrated currently.
Low engine oil pressure warning indicator		This indicator is used to alert the driver that engine oil pressure is low. Drive vehicle to a safe area and stop. Please go to authorized service station for inspection and repair immediately.
ECO mode indicator	ECO	When economic mode is turned on, the indicator comes on.
Normal mode indicator	NORMAL	When normal mode is turned on, the indicator comes on.
Sport mode indicator	SPORT	When sport mode is turned on, the indicator comes on.






2. PREPARATION FOR DRIVING

Electric mode indicator	EV	Remaining on indicates that vehicle enters EV mode.
	EV+	Remaining on indicates that vehicle enters EV+ mode.
HEV mode indicator	HEV	Remaining on indicates that vehicle enters HEV mode.
Charging gun connection indicator		Remaining on indicates that charging connection device is connected.
Discharging gun connection indicator		Remaining on indicates that discharging connection device is connected.
Charging and discharging indicator		This indicator remains on to indicate the operating condition of charging/discharging system. If this indicator does not remain on when vehicle is powered on, or it remains on after vehicle starts, please go to authorized service station for inspection and repair as soon as possible.
High voltage insulation malfunction indicator		This indicator remains on to indicate the insulating property of high voltage system decreases. Please contact authorized service station for inspection and repair immediately.
		This indicator remains on to indicate the insulating property of high voltage system seriously decreases. Please contact authorized service station for inspection and repair immediately.
Power battery system malfunction indicator		This indicator remains on to indicate the power battery system is malfunctioning. Please contact authorized service station for inspection and repair immediately.
Vehicle high voltage system malfunction indicator		This indicator remains on to indicate the power battery, electric drive, charging system are malfunctioning. Please contact authorized service station for inspection and repair immediately.

Power battery indicator		Remaining on indicates that power battery is low. Please charge as soon as possible.
		Remaining on indicates that power battery is seriously discharged. Please charge as soon as possible.
Fatigue driving indicator		This indicator is used to remind the driver to take a rest.
Automatic emergency braking system (AEB) indicator		This indicator is used to indicate that automatic emergency braking system (AEB) is in operating condition currently.
Automatic emergency braking (AEB) system malfunction indicator		This indicator is used to indicate that automatic emergency braking (AEB) system is malfunctioning. Please go to authorized service station for inspection and repair as soon as possible.
Automatic emergency braking (AEB) system OFF indicator		When AEB function is turned off, AEB OFF indicator will come on.
Hill descent indicator		This indicator is used to indicate that the vehicle's hill descent is operating currently.
Hill descent malfunction indicator		This indicator is used to indicate that the vehicle's hill descent is malfunctioning currently. Please drive slowly to authorized service station for inspection and repair as soon as possible.
Blind spot monitoring system indicator		Steady on indicates that the blind spot monitoring system enters the first-level alarm state.
		Blinking indicates that the blind spot monitoring system enters the level 2 alarm state.
Blind spot monitoring system malfunction indicator		This indicator is used to indicate that the blind spot monitoring system is faulty. Please go to authorized service station for inspection and repair as soon as possible.

2. PREPARATION FOR DRIVING

Active speed limit indicator		This indicator is used to indicate that the active speed limit is in pre-speed limiting state.
		This indicator is used to indicate that the active speed limit is in speed limit state.
Cruise control system indicator		Blinking indicates that the cruise control system is in pre-cruise state.
		Steady on indicates that the cruise control system is in cruise state.
Adaptive cruise control system indicator		This indicator is used to indicate that the adaptive cruise control system is in pre-cruise state.
		This indicator is used to indicate that the adaptive cruise control system is in cruise state.
Adaptive cruise control system malfunction indicator		This indicator is used to indicate that the adaptive cruise control system is faulty. Please go to authorized service station for inspection and repair as soon as possible.
Lane departure warning system indicator		This indicator is used to indicate that lane departure warning system is on or in restricted state.
		Steady on indicates that the lane departure warning system is in stand-by state. Blinking indicates that the lane departure warning system is active.
Lane departure warning system malfunction indicator		This indicator is used to indicate that the lane departure warning system is faulty. Please go to authorized service station for inspection and repair as soon as possible.
Emergency lane keeping system indicator		This indicator is used to indicate that emergency lane keeping system is on or in restricted state.
		This indicator is used to indicate that emergency lane keeping system is in stand-by state.
		This indicator is used to indicate that emergency lane keeping system is active.

Emergency lane keeping system malfunction indicator		This indicator is used to indicate that the emergency lane keeping system is faulty. Please go to authorized service station for inspection and repair as soon as possible.
Safety warning light		This malfunction light comes on to indicate that one of the vehicle's systems is malfunctioning currently. Please go to authorized service station for inspection and repair as soon as possible.
Gasoline Particulate Filter (GPF) indicator (if equipped)		This indicator comes on to alert the driver that Gasoline Particulate Filter (GPF) is full, please increase the speed and clean it.
Gasoline Particulate Filter (GPF) malfunction indicator (if equipped)		This indicator comes on to alert the driver that Gasoline Particulate Filter (GPF) is malfunctioning. Please go to authorized service station for inspection and repair as soon as possible.
Maintenance indicator		This indicator is used to alert the driver that the vehicle needs maintenance. Please go to authorized service station for inspection and repair as soon as possible.

2-3. Steering Wheel

Horn



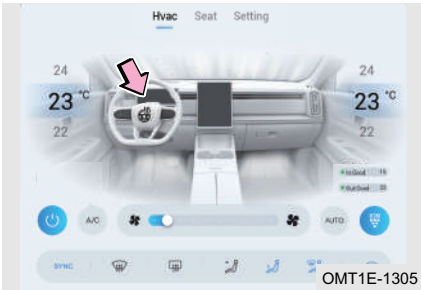
To sound the horn, press area near horn mark on the steering wheel.

READ

Obey local regulations regarding usage of vehicle horns.

2. PREPARATION FOR DRIVING

Heated Steering Wheel (If Equipped)



After starting the vehicle, press "🚗" on the air conditioning system screen to turn on steering wheel heating function. After pressing the button again, steering wheel heating function is turned off.

CAUTION

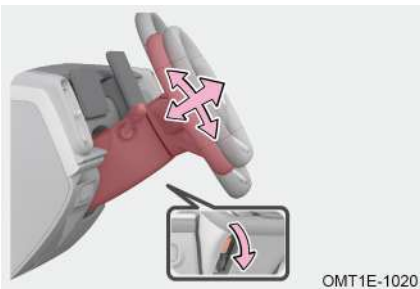
When the following conditions are met, the steering wheel heating function will be turned on:

- Engine is operating.
- Voltage of battery is in normal range.
- Steering heated switch is pressed.

When any of the following conditions is met, the function will turn off after it works for a period of time:

- Engine stops.
- Steering heated switch is pressed again.

Adjusting Steering Wheel



Stop vehicle at a safe place away from major traffic, turn vehicle power to OFF mode :

Step 1: Push down adjustment lever and release it;

Step 2: Adjust steering wheel upward and downward/forward and backward to a comfortable angle;

Step 3: Hold steering wheel steady and push adjustment lever to original position;

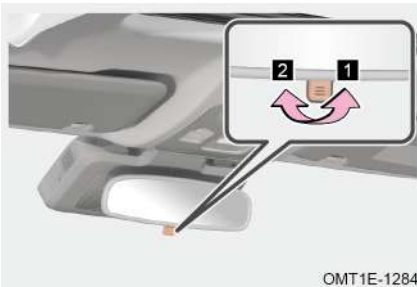
Step 4: Check if the steering wheel is shaking. Repeat operations of step 3 if shaking.

⚠ WARNING

- Make sure the steering wheel is securely locked before driving, otherwise it may cause accidents and personal injuries.
- Do not adjust steering wheel while driving, otherwise it may cause accidents and personal injuries.

2-4. Rear View Mirror**Manual Inside Rear View Mirror****Adjusting inside rear view mirror position**

Adjust inside rear view mirror to a proper position before driving, to make sure that driver can achieve an optimum view.

Adjusting anti-glare position

Before driving at night, adjust the inside rear view mirror lever to the anti-glare position, which can reduce the reflected light from the headlights of vehicles behind.

- 1** Anti-glare position
- 2** Normal position

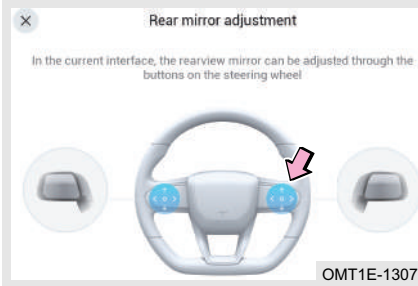
Automatic Inside Rear View Mirror

When driving at night, the light sensor installed in front/rear of the inside rear view mirror automatically detects the reflected light from the headlights of vehicles behind and automatically adjusts the lens angle to reduce the reflected light from the headlights of vehicles behind.

2. PREPARATION FOR DRIVING

Outside Rear View Mirror

Adjusting outside rear view mirror



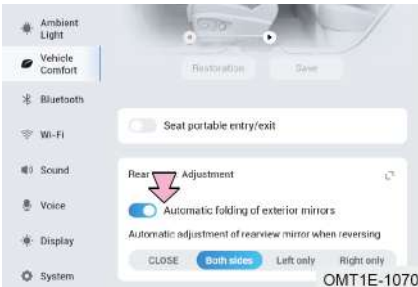
With vehicle in READY state, Audio System - Vehicle Center - Vehicle Comfort - Rear mirror adjustment.

In the current interface, the rearview mirror can be adjusted through the buttons on the steering wheel.

WARNING

- Do not adjust outside rear view mirror while driving, otherwise it may cause accidents and personal injuries.
- Image displayed on outside rear view mirror may differ from the actual, so always drive carefully.

Folding/extending outside rear view mirror



With vehicle in READY state, Audio System - Vehicle Center - Vehicle Comfort - Rear mirror adjustment.

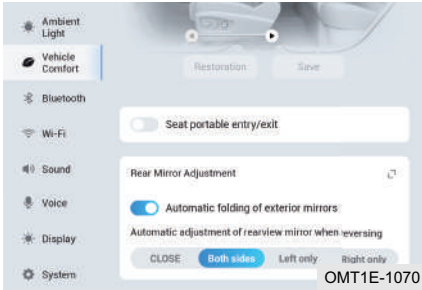
READ

According to visual field requirements, folding angles of the left and right mirrors are different. Therefore, when outside rear view mirrors automatically fold, the left and right mirrors are not synchronized, which is normal.

CAUTION

- Do not fold/extend the power outside rear view mirror manually, otherwise it may cause the folding function to fail.
- When folding/extending the outside rear view mirror, do not touch its surface to prevent damage to it with excessive force.
- In cold weather, it is recommended to turn off the outside rear view mirror automatic folding function. This will prevent the outside rear view mirror from being frozen in folding position due to accumulated snow or rain.

Outside Rear View Mirror Memory Function (If Equipped)



With vehicle in READY state, the audio system will pop up vehicle comfort screen, select driving position, rest position or alternate location, long press to update and memorize.

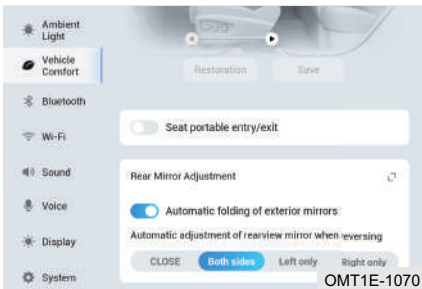
When you need to recall outside rear view mirror memory position (current ID), short press driving position button, rest position button or alternate location button by Audio System - Vehicle Center - Vehicle - seat / rear mirror position.

Note: Outside rear view mirror memory and seat memory are saved and recalled at the same time.

READ

- The vehicle is equipped with two smart keys, which have two smart key IDs to unlock and identify ID source.
- If seat memory binding is turned off, no dialog box will pop up from audio head unit after adjusting outside rear view mirror position.

Automatic Flip-down Function of Outside Rear View Mirror When Reversing (If Equipped)



With vehicle in READY state. Set rear view mirror automatic adjustment in reversing to OFF/both sides/only the left /only the right through Audio System - Vehicle Center - Vehicle - seat / rear mirror position.

When vehicle is reversing (shift to R), outside rear view mirror will flip down automatically, so that you can see the curb below; If your visual field cannot be satisfied, you can adjust position of outside rear view mirror lens. When shifting out of R position, the position will be saved automatically (outside rear view mirror automatic flipping down position).

2. PREPARATION FOR DRIVING

■ Automatic flip-down function of outside rear view mirror when reversing will return to position before flipping down under following conditions:

- When shifting out of R position.
- Vehicle speed is higher than 10 km/h.
- Switch vehicle power to OFF mode.

2-5. Wiper System

Front Wiper Operation

Wiper Switch



With vehicle in READY state:

High speed mode: Push roller to "HI" position to operate quickly and continuously.

Low speed mode: Push roller to "LO" position to operate slowly and continuously.

OFF: Push roller to "OFF" position, wipers will operate automatically at low speed until wipers return to stop position.

Auto sensing mode: Push roller to "AUTO" position, automatically control the wiping speed of the wiper according to amount of rainfall outside.

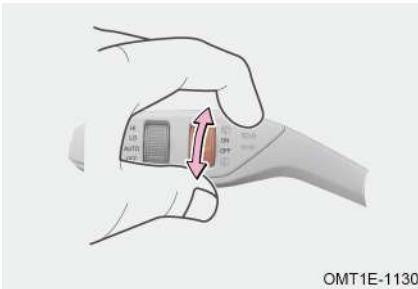


Spray mode: Shortly press the left button of wiper switch, the wiper will stop after wiping once; Press and hold the left button of wiper switch, the front washer sprays water, and front wiper operates simultaneously. Front washer will stop operating when the switch is released, the wiper will wipe 3 cycles at low speed, and operate one cycle then stop after a few seconds.

⚠ CAUTION


- Do not operate wiper when the windshield is dry, as this may damage wiper blade or scratch the windshield.
- Do not operate wipers if there are obstacles on windshield, as this may scratch the windshield and damage wiper motor.
- In cold weather, always check if wiper blade is frozen onto windshield before using wipers. If so, defrost before using, otherwise it may damage wiper blade and wiper motor.

Rear washer operation



With vehicle in READY state:

Push roller to "ON" position, rear wiper operates; Push roller to "OFF" position, rear wiper is turned off.

Push roller to "  " position from "ON"/"OFF" position and hold, rear washer sprays and rear wiper operates simultaneously.

⚠ CAUTION

- Do not operate wiper switch when there is no washer fluid in reservoir.
- When operating wiper switch to spray water, do not exceed 10 seconds at a time.
- The antifreeze will corrode any painted surface, so be careful when adding washer fluid.
- Do not try to clear a nozzle with a pin or other objects when it becomes blocked, or it will be damaged.
- Do not operate wiper when the windshield is dry, as this may damage wiper blade and scratch the windshield.
- Do not operate wipers if there are obstacles on windshield, as this may scratch the windshield and damage wiper motor.
- Do not mix water with the washer. Water may cause the solution to freeze and damage the washing tank and other parts of the washer system.
- In cold winter, always check if wiper blade is frozen onto windshield before using wipers. If so, defrost it before using, otherwise it may damage wiper blade and wiper motor.

2. PREPARATION FOR DRIVING

Wiper Nozzle Heating Function (If Equipped)

The front nozzle heating function will be turned on when following conditions are met:

- Battery voltage is within the normal range.
- Outside temperature is below 2°C for 5 seconds or more.
- With vehicle in READY state or after engine starts.

After the function is turned on, front wiper nozzle heating function turns off when any of the following conditions are met:

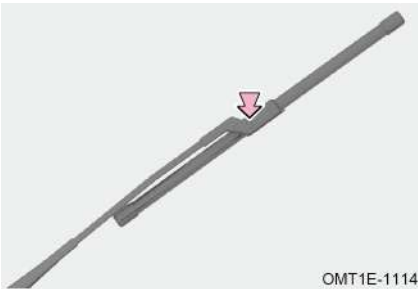
- It is turned off automatically after the function works approximately 20 minutes.
- When outside temperature is higher than 4°C for 5 seconds or more, front wiper nozzle heating function turns off.

The function interrupts during the wiper nozzle heating:

- When engine starts, front wiper nozzle heating function temporarily pauses until, and after engine starts, the heating function will recover automatically.
- Battery voltage is not within the normal range, front wiper nozzle heating function interrupts.

Wiper Blade Replacement

Replacing front wiper blades



Step 1: Click "OFF" button in control center, short press the left button of wiper switch to enter maintenance mode within several seconds after switching vehicle to power off state;

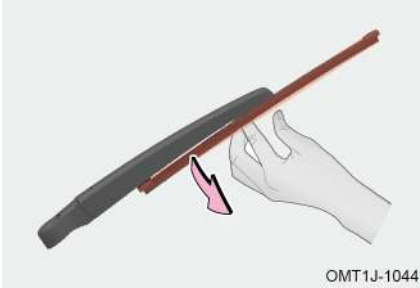
Step 2: Lift the front wiper arm and hold;

Step 3: Push wiper blades outward while pressing the lock button to remove the blades;

Step 4: Install the new wiper blades in reverse order, and make sure the fixing clamp is locked firmly;

Step 5: Check that front wipers operate properly.

Replacing rear wiper blade



Step 1: Click "OFF" button in control center, push the rear wiper roller to "ON" position to enter maintenance mode within several seconds after switching vehicle to power off state;

Step 2: Lift the rear wiper arm and hold;

Step 3: Separate the wiper blade by hand as shown in the illustration;

Step 4: Install the new wiper blades in reverse order, and be sure to install them in place;

Step 5: Switch the vehicle to READY state, push the rear wiper roller to "OFF" position to exit maintenance mode, and the rear wiper returns to its original position;

Step 6: Check that rear wipers operate properly.

READ

It is recommended you have wiper blades replaced by someone at authorized service station to ensure correct fitting.

CAUTION

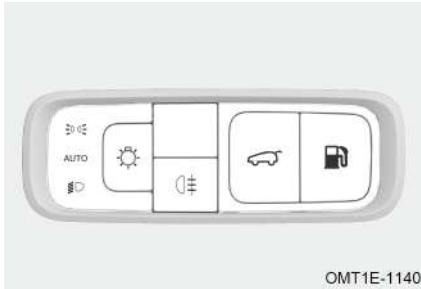
Make sure the wiper arm returns to its original position before driving, otherwise it may damage the vehicle and cause an accident.

2. PREPARATION FOR DRIVING


2-6. Lighting System

Exterior Lighting

Headlight combination switch




With vehicle in READY state, operate headlight combination switch:

Press  button to circularly turn on automatic mode - low beam lights - position lights - headlight OFF, and the corresponding switch indicator remains on.

When automatic mode is turned on, the intensity of external light is sensed, and on/off of position lights, low beam lights, and license plate lights is automatically controlled.

When low beam lights are turned on, position lights ON function is maintained.

Position lights: Position lights, license plate light, ambient lights and backlights are turned on at the same time.

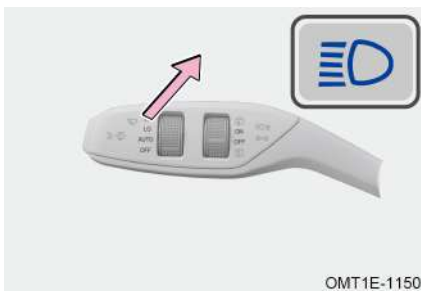
Rear fog lights: When low beam light is turned on, press "" button to turn on rear fog lights.

READ

When parking vehicle for a long time or before leaving vehicle, make sure that headlight combination switch is turned off to prevent the battery from being depleted. Failure to do so may cause the vehicle not to start.

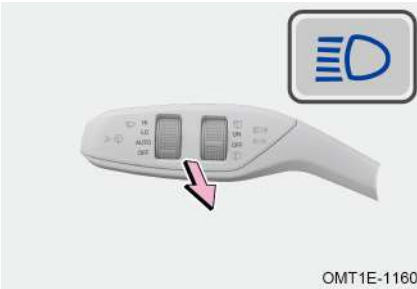
Headlight high beam

■ High beam lights



When turning on low beam light, pull headlight combination switch away from steering wheel side and release, headlight high beam comes on; Pull headlight combination switch towards steering wheel side and release to turn off headlight high beam.

■ High beam lights flash



Pull headlight combination switch towards the steering wheel and release it to flash the high beam lights once. At the same time, headlight high beam indicator in instrument cluster flashes once.

READ

High beam light can flash when the low beam light is off.

Turn signal lights



With vehicle in READY state, switch headlight combination switch :

Pull up: Right turn signal lights come on.

Pull down: Left turn signal lights come on.

When turn signal lights are turned on, the indicator will flash in the instrument cluster. As vehicle is turning back after turning, combination switch automatically returns to center position.

■ Lane change assist function

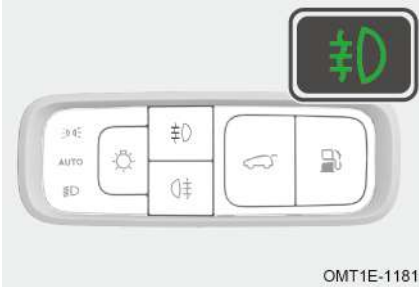
With vehicle in READY state, pull turn signal light switch once but not too far over. This will make the indicator flash 3 times.

READ

During a slight steering wheel turn, headlight combination switch may not automatically return to original position.

2. PREPARATION FOR DRIVING

Front fog lights (if equipped)



With vehicle in READY state, when position lights turn on, operate fog light switch to "☁" position to turn on front fog lights; Turn vehicle power to OFF mode or operate fog light switch to "OFF" position again, front fog lights turn off.

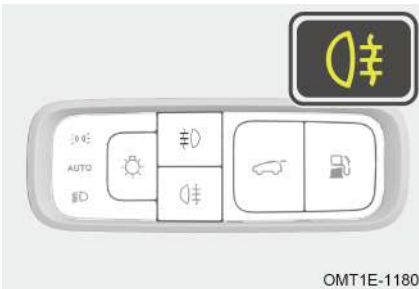
■ Assist steering lighting

When the vehicle power is in ON mode and the speed is lower than 40 km/h, front fog lights will come on when the turn signal lights are turned on or steering wheel is turned more than 40° and low beam light is turned on.

Turn off the assist steering lighting function when any of the following conditions are met:

- Vehicle power is in ACC or OFF mode.
- Turn off the turn signal light or turn the steering wheel below 10°.
- Turn off the low beam light.
- Vehicle speed is higher than 40 km/h.

Rear fog light



With vehicle in READY state, when front fog light or low beam lights turn on, operate fog light switch to "☁" position to turn on rear fog light; After turning vehicle power to OFF mode or operate fog light switch to "☁" or "OFF" position again, rear fog light turns off.

📖 READ

- When turning off front fog lights or low beam lights, rear fog light turns off at the same time.
- Obey local regulations regarding usage of fog lights.

Daytime running lights

When the engine is started, the low beam lights, high beam lights and front fog lights are not turned on, the daytime running lights are turned on. Daytime running lights turn off automatically when low beam lights, high beam lights or position lights are turned on.

Brake lights

Depress the brake pedal, brake lights and high mounted brake light turn on.

Back-up lights

With vehicle in READY state, shift the shift lever to R, back-up lights turn on.

License plate lights

With vehicle in READY state and rotate headlight combination switch to "☀️" position to turn on license plate lights. They are used to illuminate license plate in the dark.

Ground light (if equipped)

Use key to unlock vehicle to open any of front door, ground light comes on.

Interior Lighting**Front dome lights**

1 Reading lights switch: Press "☀️" switch to turn reading lights on, press the switch again to turn reading lights off.

2 Door control switch: Press "🚪" switch, if any door is opened and keep opening, dome lights will be on for 3 minutes (fade in and out).

Rear dome lights

Press rear dome light switch, the light comes on, press the switch again to turn off light.

Glove box light (if equipped)

When the glove box is opened, the light will come on. When the glove box is closed, the light will go off.

Armrest box light (if equipped)

When the armrest box is opened, the light will come on. When the armrest box is closed, the light will go off.

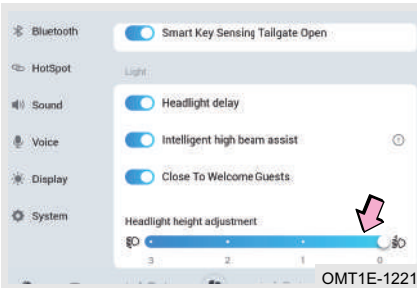
2. PREPARATION FOR DRIVING

Luggage compartment lights



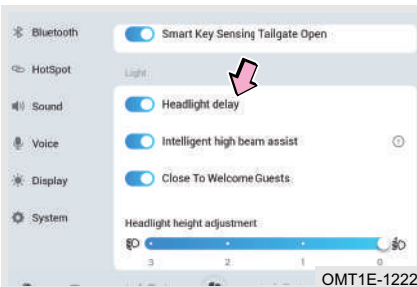
When back door is opened, luggage compartment lights will turn on for several seconds automatically. When back door is closed, luggage compartment lights will turn off immediately.

Headlight Height Adjustment



With vehicle in READY state, turn on the headlight leveling adjusting through Audio System - Vehicle Center - Quick Control.

Follow Me Home Function

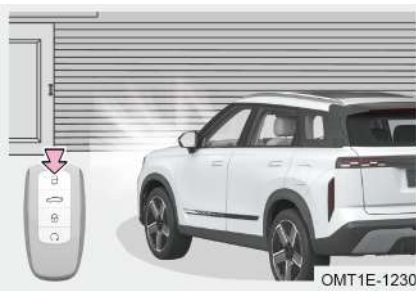


With vehicle in READY state, turn on the headlight delay through Audio System - Vehicle Center - Quick Control.



ON: With vehicle powered off, turn on the headlight auto mode before stopping. When the vehicle is in a dim environment, press lock button on smart key, and the vehicle is armed successfully. Low beam lights automatically come on for 10 seconds. Press lock button on smart key to activate it again. **OFF:** With vehicle powered on, turn off the headlight or reaches the set operating time, the follow me home function will turn off automatically. Low beam lights will go off immediately.

Smart Vehicle Locating Function



Turn the headlight combination switch to "AUTO" position before stopping. When the vehicle is in a dim environment, press unlock button on smart key, the low beam lights come on for 27 seconds.

Intelligent Headlight Function (IHC) (If Equipped)

With vehicle in READY state, and turn the headlight combination switch to "-AUTO" position. When the low beam light turns on automatically, pull the headlight combination switch away from steering wheel side and release. When the vehicle speed is more than 40 km/h, the white indicator "⊕A" in instrument cluster remains on, and the intelligent headlight function (IHC) is activated; At this time, the intelligent headlight function (IHC) automatically turns headlight high beam on/off according to road conditions, such as meeting, following, and overtaking.

When the intelligent headlight function (IHC) is activated, the headlight high beam turns on or flashes, the white indicator "⊕A" in instrument cluster goes out. Pull the headlight combination switch away from the steering wheel side and release, intelligent headlight function (IHC) is reactivated.

2. PREPARATION FOR DRIVING

READ

- When the vehicle speed is less than 30 km/h, the intelligent headlight function (IHC) turns off the headlight high beam automatically.
- When the ambient brightness is too high, the intelligent headlight function (IHC) turns off the headlight high beam automatically.
- When the left/right turn signal light is activated, the intelligent headlight function (IHC) can not turn the headlight high beam on automatically.
- Intelligent headlight function (IHC) needs to be set in audio system. For details, refer to "Audio System".

Fogging Instructions for Light

When the weather is cold or humid, the inner side of lights will fog up due to the difference in temperature between the inside and outside. After lights turn on for a period of time, the fog inside the lights will gradually disappear, and there may still be some fog at the edge of the lights. This is normal. This fog has no effect on service life of lighting system. The vehicle lights generate fog, which gradually begins to disappear in the lights of the headlight within 30 minutes after the low and high beam lights are turned on. After a period of lighting, the moisture disappears naturally. This is normal.

WARNING

- Following guidelines for driving through water (for example: water depth, speed, etc.) to avoid any water entering the lights.
- After opening light dust cover, reinstall it in place at the end of operation, otherwise water may enter the lights.
- When replacing a bulb, strictly check installation of various light components to make sure that they are installed correctly and sealed properly. When installing rear cover, check its seal ring and keep it clean! Otherwise, it will lead to water and dust entering lights!
- It is strictly forbidden to flush the engine compartment with a high pressure washer, in particular, the lights cannot be flushed. Due to high pressure of a pressure cleaner, accessories on lights may be loose or fall off, vent hole and wire harness connector may damp, resulting in water infiltration or moisture not dispersing for a long time, and even severe condensation.

2-7. Seats

Head Restraints



Adjust head restraint upward: Pull it up directly to a proper height.

Adjust head restraint downward: Push the head restraint down while pressing the lock release button.



Removing head restraints: Pull the head restraint up completely while pressing 2 lock release buttons.

Installing head restraints: Align the head restraint with the installation holes and push it down to lock position. Press and hold the lock release button when lowering the head restraint.

⚠ WARNING

- Do not adjust head restraints while driving, otherwise it may cause accidents and personal injury.
- Make sure the head restraint is securely locked before driving, otherwise it may cause accidents and personal injury.

2. PREPARATION FOR DRIVING

Front Seats

Correct sitting posture

The seats, head restraints, seat belts and airbags are helpful to protect passengers. Using them correctly will provide you with more protection.



When sitting, sit slightly inclined backwards (25° backward from vertical position is ideal) and well back on seatback.

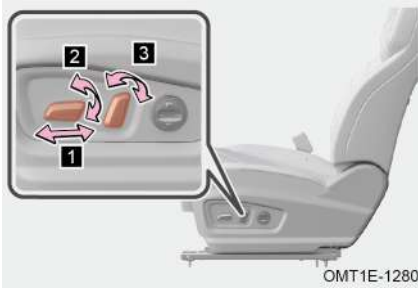
The front seats must not be too close to the instrument panel. The driver should hold the steering wheel with slightly bent arms during driving. Their feet should also be bent slightly so that they can fully depress the pedal. Adjust head restraints properly so that the top of the head restraint is closest to the top of your head.



The shoulder belt should be over the center of the shoulder and close to the chest, kept away from the neck, the lap belt should lie over the hips instead of stomach.

Power seat

■ Adjusting power seat



1 Adjusting seat position forward and backward

Move button forward and backward to adjust the seat back and forth.

2 Adjusting seat height (if equipped)

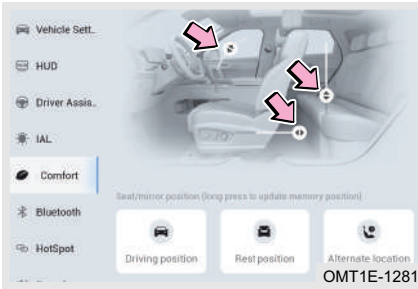
Move rear end of button upward and downward to adjust seat upward and downward.

3 Seatback angle adjustment

Move upper end of button forward and backward to adjust seatback angle.

With vehicle in READY state, click the icons by Audio System - Vehicle Center - Vehicle Comfort to adjust the seat position.

After adjusting the seat position, this interface will pop up on the audio screen.



Front seat front and back positions and seatback angle adjustable range (- Following data are applicable to power and manual seats):

The total adjustable front and rear range is 240 mm: When at designed position, it can be adjusted 200 mm forward and 40 mm backward; The driver's seat height can be adjusted by a range of 60 mm: When at designed position, it can be adjusted 40 mm upward and 20 mm downward; The seatback designed angle is 25°; When at designed angle, it can be adjusted 30° forward and 50° backward.

Note: When measuring the seat depth, seats and seatbacks should be adjusted to the original (designed) positions.

⚠ CAUTION

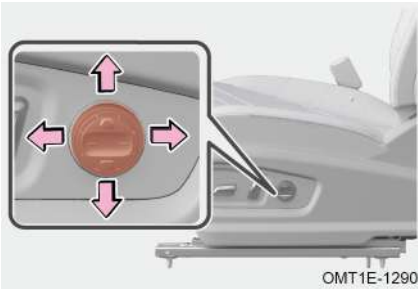
Do not place any items under the seat while moving the seat, otherwise it will damage the seat.


2. PREPARATION FOR DRIVING


WARNING


- Do not adjust seat while driving, otherwise it may cause accidents and personal injury.
- Avoid reclining seatback any more than needed, the seat belts provide maximum protection in a frontal or rear collision when the driver and the front passenger sit inclined slightly backwards and well back in their seats.


■ Adjusting driver power seat waist (if equipped)



Long press "" to support upper part of waist and reduce support to lower part of waist.

Long press "" to support lower part of waist and reduce support to upper part of waist.

Long press "" to increase support to overall forward side of waist.

Long press "" to reduce support to overall forward side of waist.

■ Front passenger manual seat (if equipped)



1 Adjusting seat forward and backward

Pull grip up and move the seat back and forth to adjust the seat position. After adjusting seat to a desired position, release the grip. Then, shake the seat forward and backward to make sure that the seat is locked properly.

2 Adjusting seatback angle

Lean your body against seatback, and then pull seatback adjustment lever upward. Adjust seatback to desired angle by changing tilt angle of your body and release the lever. After that, apply force backward against the seatback to make sure that the seatback is locked properly.

■ Front passenger power seat captain button (if equipped)



1 Adjusting seat forward and backward

Move button forward and backward parallel to adjust seat position.

2 Adjusting seatback angle

Move upper end of button forward and backward to adjust seatback angle.

READ

There is a limit position for waist support adjustment. When reaching the limit position, release the adjusting button in time.

CAUTION

Do not place any items under the seat while moving the seat, otherwise it will damage the seat.

WARNING

- Do not adjust seat while driving, otherwise it may cause accidents and personal injuries.
- Avoid reclining seatback any more than needed, the seat belts provide maximum protection in a frontal or rear collision when the driver and the front passenger slightly incline backward and well back in their seats while sitting.

Rear Seat

Folding seatback (the right seat is folded in the same way)



Adjust height of seat head restraints, remove them if necessary and fold up center armrest. Then pull the left seatback adjustment handle forward and pull seatback forward to fold it down slowly. This can enlarge the luggage storage space.

2. PREPARATION FOR DRIVING

READ

When folding seatback, make sure that outer seat belt passes around the seatback to avoid damaging the belt.

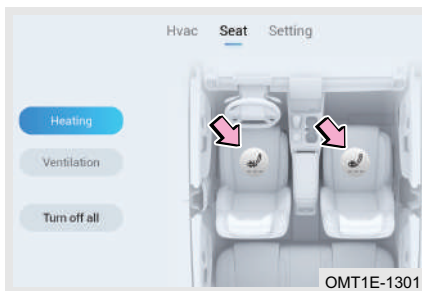
WARNING

- Do not adjust seat while driving, otherwise it may cause accidents and personal injury.
- Do not fold the seatbacks down while driving.
- Do not allow anyone to sit on a folded seatback or in the trunk while driving.
- Do not allow children to enter the trunk.
- Do Be careful not to catch your hand when folding the rear seatbacks.
- Adjust the position of the front seat before folding down the rear seatbacks so that the front seat does not interfere with the rear seatbacks when folding down the rear seatbacks.
- After returning the seatback to the upright position, make sure that the seatback is securely locked in position by lightly rocking it back and forth.
- If the seatback is not securely locked, the red marking will be visible on the seatback lock knob. make sure that the red marking is not visible.

When at designed angle, rear seatback can be adjusted 106.8° forward and 4.7° backward.

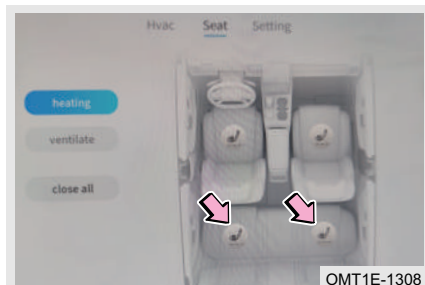
Seat Heating Function

Front seat heaters (if equipped)



After starting the vehicle, click front seat heater button by air conditioning display screen - seat - heating, it is 3-level heating (3 indicators on). Each time the switch is clicked, the heating level is lowered one level. Click it the fourth time to turn off the seat heating.

Rear seat heaters (if equipped)



Method 1: After starting the vehicle, click rear seat heater button by air conditioning display screen - seat - heating, it is 3-level heating (3 indicators on). Each time the switch is clicked, the heating level is lowered one level. Click it the fourth time to turn off the seat heating.



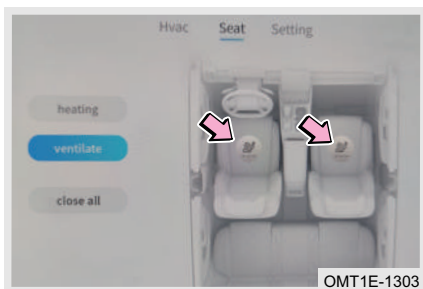
Method 2: After starting the vehicle, press the rear seat heater switch. it is 3-level heating (3 indicators on). Each time the switch is pressed, the heating level is reduced by one level. Press it the fourth time to turn off the seat heating.

READ

Front seat heating and front seat ventilation cannot be turned on simultaneously.

Seat Ventilation Function (If Equipped)

Front seat ventilation



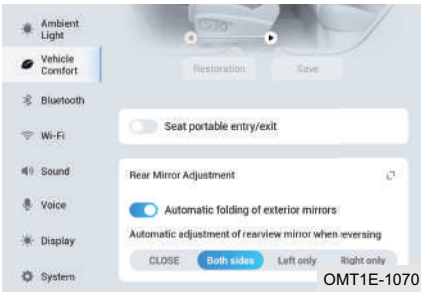
After starting the vehicle, click seat ventilation button by air conditioning display screen - seat - ventilate, it is 3-level ventilation (3 indicators come on). Each time the switch is clicked, the ventilation level is reduced by one level; Click it for the fourth time to turn off the seat ventilation.

READ

Front seat heating and front seat ventilation cannot be turned on simultaneously.

2. PREPARATION FOR DRIVING

Seat Memory Function (If Equipped)



With vehicle in READY state, the audio system will pop up vehicle comfort screen, select Driving position, Rest position or Alternate location, long press to update and memorize.

When you need to recall seat memory position (current ID), select driving position button, rest position button or alternate location button by Audio System - Vehicle Center - Vehicle Comfort - Seat / rear mirror position.

Note: Seat memory and outside rear view mirror memory are saved and recalled at the same time.

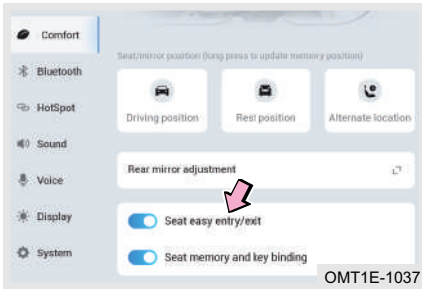
READ

- The binding between seat memory and smart key need to be set in audio system.
- The vehicle is equipped with two smart keys, which have two smart key IDs to unlock and identify ID source.
- If seat memory and key binding is turned off, no dialog box will pop up from audio head unit after adjusting seats.

WARNING

When seat memory binding function turns on, please ensure that nobody is caught. If so, move the seat adjustment button to stop operation of seats. Do not leave children alone in vehicle. Otherwise, they may be caught due to seat memory function.

Seat Portable Entry / Exit Function (If Equipped)



With vehicle in READY state, turn on the easy seat access/exit through Audio System - Vehicle Center - Vehicle Comfort.

With vehicle switched from READY to power off and open driver door, driver seat automatically moves backward a certain distance so that driver can get off conveniently. With vehicle switched from power off to power on, the driver seat moves forwards a certain distance automatically for easy starting off.

⚠ WARNING

When seat portable entry / exit function turns on, please ensure that nobody is caught. If so, move the seat adjustment button to stop operation of seats. Do not leave children alone in vehicle. Otherwise, they may be caught due to seat portable entry / exit function.

2-8. Seat Belts

Seat Belts



We strongly recommend the driver and passengers wear their seat belts correctly at all times. Failure to do so could increase possibility and severity of injury in an accident. Check the seat belt regularly. If any seat belt function failure is found, please contact authorized service station for inspection and repair immediately.

If driver seat belt and/or front passenger seat belt are not buckled or fastened firmly: When vehicle speed is less than 25 km/h, red indicator "⚠" in instrument cluster turns on; When vehicle speed is 25 km/h or more, the red indicator "⚠" in instrument cluster flashes, accompanied by sound alarm.

If the rear seat belt is not buckled or fastened firmly: When vehicle speed is 25 km/h or more, the indicator "⚠⚠⚠" (if equipped) in instrument cluster flashes for a few seconds and then remains on, accompanied by sound alarm.

Note: the red indicator light turns on when the corresponding rear seat belt is not fastened, and turns off when the corresponding rear seat belt is fastened.

2. PREPARATION FOR DRIVING

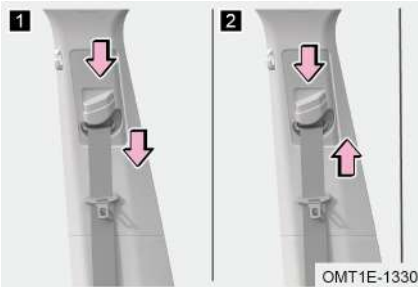
READ

Front passenger seat belt alarm is not standard. Please refer to the actual vehicle.

When the rear seat belts are not fastened, the red indicator in instrument cluster is on. After one of the rear seat belts is fastened, the green indicator is on. When all the seat belts are fastened, the indicator light goes out.

Using seat belt correctly

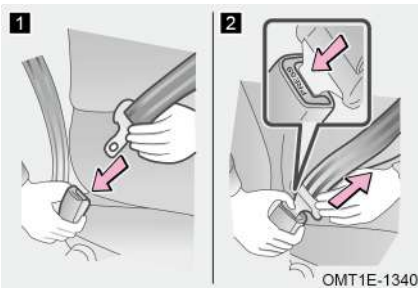
Step 1: Adjust the height of front seat belts;



1 Adjust downward: Push seat belt adjustment button downward while pressing adjusting button.

2 Adjust upward: Push seat belt adjustment button upward while pressing adjusting button.

Step 2: Fasten/release seat belt;



1 Fastening seat belt: Push the tab into the buckle until a "click" sound is heard.

2 Releasing seat belt: Press the release button to retract seat belt. If the belt cannot retract smoothly, pull it out and check for kinks or twists. Make sure that seat belt can retract smoothly.

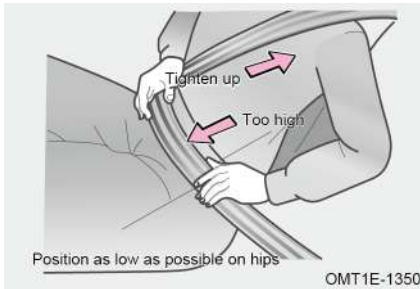
READ

- Each seat belt shall be used by one person only. Do not use a seat belt for more than one person at one time, including children.
- The seat belt will lock when it is pulled out quickly or the vehicle is on a slope, but it will not lock when pulling it out slowly.

CAUTION

- Make sure that seat belt buckle position is correct and is locked safely, otherwise it may cause personal injury.
- Do not use any seat belt with a loose buckle, otherwise, the seat belt will not protect the passengers in the event of sudden braking or a collision.

Step 3: Adjust the position of seat belts.



To adjust the seatback angle, sit up straightly and well back in the seat. Position the lap belt as low as possible on your hips — not on your waist, then pull the shoulder section upward so that it comes fully over the shoulder, but does not come into contact with the neck or slide off the shoulder.

⚠ CAUTION

- We recommend that children be seated in the rear seat and always use seat belt or appropriate child restraint system.
- Avoid loose fitting clothes when driving. These can prevent the seatbelt fitting correctly and can affect the protection offered.
- Do not recline seat more than necessary to achieve a comfortable ride. Seat belts are most effective when passengers are sitting up straight and well back in their seats.
- Make sure the shoulder belt is positioned across your shoulder. Do not place the shoulder belt under your arm. The belt should be kept away from your neck, but not falling off your shoulder. Failure to do so could reduce the protection effect of seat belt in an accident.
- Both high-positioned lap belts and loose-fitting belts could cause death or serious injuries during a collision or other unintended events.

Three-point seat belt for the second row center seat



When inserting the small tab into the small buckle of left side of the second row seat, use a screwdriver with its tip wrapped with tape or similar object to press the position shown in illustration and pull out the small tab.

📖 READ

When the seatback is folded, three-point seat belt for the second row center seat needs to be released, otherwise it may lock and cannot be pulled out.

2. PREPARATION FOR DRIVING

Maintaining seat belt



Check seat belts regularly for cuts, fraying, loose and stretched belt (- such as after a traffic accident) If the seat belt is damaged, please contact authorized service station for inspection and repair immediately.

CAUTION

- Do not allow water to penetrate belt retractor or buckle mechanism.
- Never use chemical detergent, boiling water, bleach or dye to wash the seat belt.
- The seat belt should be washed with mild cleanser or warm water and dry naturally. Never clean it with artificial heat.
- Do not try to repair or lubricate retractor or buckle mechanism of seat belt, or repair seat belt in any way, we will not be held for any problem caused in this way.

WARNING

- If your vehicle has been involved in a serious accident and even if seat belt is not obviously damaged, you should contact authorized service station for inspection and repair.
- Ensure that the belt and the tab are locked and the belt is not twisted. If the seat belt does not function properly, please contact authorized service station for inspection and repair immediately.
- Do not attempt to install, remove, modify, disassemble or dispose of the seat belts. Have any service done to the seat belts by authorized service station.

Seat belt precautions

■ Precautions for using seat belt by a child

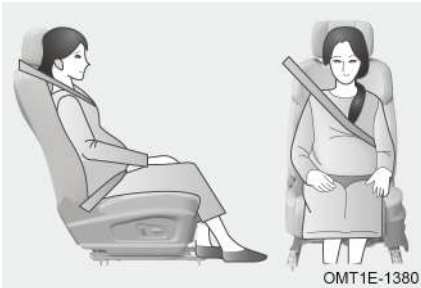
The seat belts of your vehicle are principally designed for persons of adult size. Use a child restraint system (For details, refer to "Child Restraint System" in this section) appropriate for the child, until the child becomes large enough to properly wear the vehicle seat belt. When the child becomes large enough to properly wear the vehicle seat belt, follow the instructions regarding seat belt usage. If a child is too large to use a child restraint system, the child should sit in the rear seat and must be restrained using the vehicle seat belt.



Make sure the shoulder belt is positioned across the center of child's shoulder. The belt should be kept away from child's neck, but not falling off child's shoulder. Otherwise, the child is at risk of serious injury or even death during a collision.

Failure to use a child restraint system (for example: Let a child stand or kneel on seats; Let a child sit on an adult's laps; Holding a child in arms). This may cause death or serious injuries during a collision.

■ Precautions for using seat belt by a pregnant woman



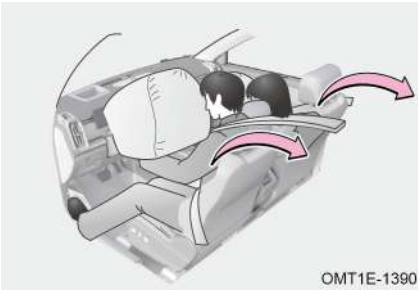
Obtain medical advice and wear the seat belt properly. Women who are pregnant should position the lap belt as low as possible over the hips in the same manner as other occupants. Extend the shoulder belt completely over the shoulder and across the chest, avoid belt contact with the abdominal area. If the seat belt is not worn properly, it may cause serious injuries or death during a collision.

⚠ WARNING

- After inserting the tab, make sure that the tab and buckle are locked and that the lap and shoulder belt are not twisted.
- Do not insert coins, clips, etc. into the buckle to prevent from properly latching tab and buckle.
- If the seat belt does not function normally, it cannot protect passengers from death or serious injury, please contact authorized service station for inspection and repair immediately.

2. PREPARATION FOR DRIVING

Seat Belt Pretensioner (If Equipped)



1. Seat belt pretensioner is designed to assist front airbag in the event of a severe impact.
2. In the event of a minor impact or side impact, pretensioner may not be activated.
3. During a severe impact, seat belt pretensioner may be activated even if there is no occupant in front seat.
4. When seat belt pretensioner is activated, retractor quickly tightens seat belt to tightly restrain occupant.
5. When seat belt pretensioner is activated, it may make a working sound and release a small amount of non-toxic gas. The gas produced does not cause a fire and is generally harmless.

WARNING

- When seat belt pretensioner is activated, the airbag malfunction indicator remains on, and seat belts cannot be retracted / pulled out. Please contact authorized service station for inspection and repair immediately.
- Do not modify, remove, hit or open the seat belt pretensioner assembly, airbag sensor and assembly wire. Otherwise, it may cause death or serious injuries during a collision.

Function limit

In the following cases, the seat belt pretensioner may not work properly:

- Modify suspension system.
- Modify front body section.
- Repair the seat belt pretensioner or any assembly nearby.
- Seat belt pretensioner assembly or its surrounding area is damaged.
- Install grill guard or any other device to front body.

2-9. Child Restraint Systems

Child Restraint Systems

According to accident statistics, a child is safer sitting in the second row seat and properly restrained than child in front seat. Choose a child restraint system suitable for the vehicle, age and size of the child. (Vehicle seat belt meet international standards is designed according to body size of child over 1.5 m. If any under 1.5 m uses seat belt, the belt could hurt his/her neck seriously in case of an accident).

This instruction only provides installation instructions for child restraint systems (ISOFIX). For installation details, strictly follow the instructions provided by the child restraint system manufacturer.

 **WARNING**

- We suggest use standard fixing device for child restraint system on the second row seat.
- Child restraint system should comply with the safety standards set by local regulations and laws. We will take no responsibility for an accident caused by using a child restraint system.
- For effective protection in accidents and sudden stops, a child must be properly restrained using a seat belt or a appropriate child restraint system installed on the second row seat depending on age and size of the child. Holding a child in the arms is not a substitute for a child restraint system.

Child Safety Seat Grouping

Child restraint systems should comply with local motor vehicle standards for child restraint systems and child safety prevention system (ECE R44/R129), generally, the verified child restraint system is applied a local certification label and also has an orange label after testing by ECE R44/R129 standard. There is information, such as weight group, ISOFIX level and license for child restraint system, on this label.

2. PREPARATION FOR DRIVING

CRS Table

Seat position	Driver	Front Passenger		2 nd row left	2 nd row middle	2 nd row right
		Passenger Airbag ON	Passenger Airbag OFF			
Seating position suitable for universal belted (YES/NO)	N/A	NO	YES	YES	YES	YES
i-Size seating position (YES/NO)	N/A	NO	NO	YES	NO	YES
Seating position suitable for lateral fixture (L1/ L2)	N/A	NO	NO	NO	NO	NO
Largest suitable rearwardfacing fixture (R1/ R2X/ R2/ R3)	N/A	NO	NO	R1/ R2X/ R2/R3	NO	R1/ R2X/ R2/R3
Largest suitable forward facing fixture (F2X /F2/ F3)	N/A	NO	NO	F2X/F2/ F3	NO	F2X/F2/ F3
Largest suitable booster fixture (B2/ B3)	N/A	NO	NO	B2/B3	NO	B2/B3

Note:

1. The child seat category is defined according to ECE R16/R44/R129, you can find the category of child seat on it's specification. The child restraint system must be appropriate to the age, weight and size of the child.
2. If it is absolutely necessary for you to install a child seat to the front passenger seat, be sure to turn passenger airbag off. Adjust front passenger seat to the highest and rearmost position before installing universal CRS on it.
3. It is forbidden to install a child seat with a support base or with a support leg on the middle seat of the 2nd row.
4. Only universal belted child restraint systems can be used on the middle seat of the 2nd row.

Child Restraint System Precautions



This sticker is attached to front passenger sun visor and used to remind you that the vehicle is equipped with front airbag (SRS). Observe the following precautions:

- When using a rearward facing child restraint system in the front passenger seat, the passenger airbag must be OFF, Refer to "- Enabling and Disabling Front Passenger Airbag".

- Never change the design of child restraint system fixing device or seat belt on the vehicle under any circumstances.

It is the driver's responsibility to comply to the instructions provided, and to the instructions provided by the CRS manufacturer.

Recommended Child Restraint Systems

- Only use child restraints approved to either ECE R44 or ECE R129. Refer to the approval reference attached to the child restraint system.
- When using child restraint systems, please carefully read the instructions provided by the child restraint system manufacturer and strictly follow the installation instructions, to ensure the child restraint system is installed correctly.
- We recommend the following child restraint systems.

Child Stature	Name	Manufacturer	Type Of Fixation
40~83cm	Baby-Safe 2 i-Size CRS with i-Size Base	Britax Römer	ISOFIX with Support Leg (- Rearward Facing)
76~105cm	TRIFIX ² i-Size	Britax Römer	ISOFIX and TOP TETHER
100~150cm	KidFix i-Size	Britax Römer	ISOFIX and vehicle belt
137~150cm	Booster Max	GRACO	ISOFIX and vehicle belt

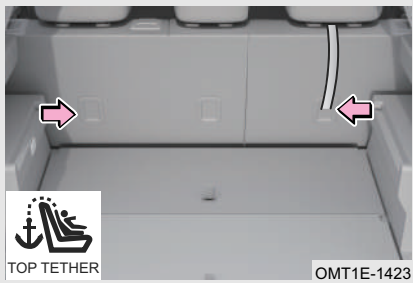
2. PREPARATION FOR DRIVING

Note:

When using Britax Römer KidFix i-Size:

- Install the SICT side impact extension as per the CRS manual instruction;
- Insert the vehicle lap belt into the Secure Guard. Do not place the vehicle diagonal belt into the Secure Guard.

Top Tether



This model is equipped with top tether strap anchorages on the back of the rear seats.

Before using a top tether strap, remove the seating position head restraint and luggage compartment cover. With the child restraint on the seat, attach the top tether strap to the anchorage, and tighten to remove all slack. Refer to instructions provided by the CRS manufacturer.

READ

- Ensure all removed head restraints are stowed safely.
- After correct installation of the child restraint and top tether, the luggage compartment cover can be re-installed.

WARNING

Ensure the top tether strap anchor is attached correctly. Incorrect installation may cause serious injury to the child.

■ Rearward-facing child restraint system



A rearward facing child restraint is installed to face to the rear of the vehicle. Only install a rearward facing child restraint on the front passenger seat if the airbag is OFF. It is recommended children use a rearward facing child restraint system up to 4 years old.

■ Forward-facing child restraint system



A forward facing child restraint is installed to face to the front of the vehicle. It is recommended children use a forward facing child restraint system when older than 4 years old.

■ Booster seat child restraint system

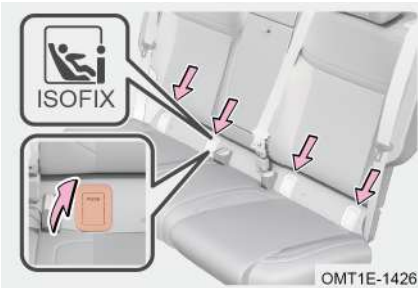


For larger children that cannot fit in a child restraint system with a high back, they may occupy a second row outboard seat using a booster seat, either attached to the lower anchorage points or belted, as described in the instructions provided by the child restraint system manufacturer.

2. PREPARATION FOR DRIVING

Installing Child Restraint Systems

Child Restraint Systems

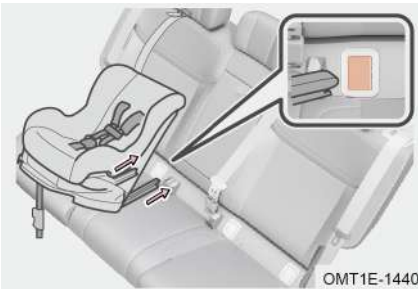


The rear outside seats are equipped with ISOFIX / i-Size anchorages. The anchorage locations are identified by a marking (see illustration) located on the seat back, directly above the associated anchorages. Please press the PUSH position to access the anchorages.

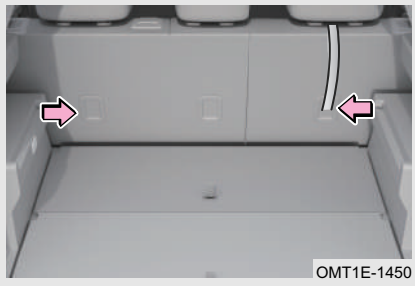
Installing Child Restraint Systems



Step 1: Locate the ISOFIX anchorage; Please adjust the second row seat back angle to the front gear.



Step 2: Please press the PUSH position to access the anchorages;
Step 3: Place the child restraint system on the rear outboard seat;
Step 4: Attach the child restraint ISOFIX probe to the anchorage. Where necessary extend the child restraint support leg.



Step 5: Where a top tether strap is required, route, correctly attach and tighten the top tether strap to the top tether anchorage.

Note: If a luggage cover is present, it will need to be removed, to allow the upper tether access to the anchor point.

Note: Refer to the child restraint system instructions whether it needs to be secured by an upper tether belt.

READ

- If it interferes with the installation, the head restraint can be removed from the seat the child restraint system is installed on.
- After attaching the upper tether to the anchor point, be sure to tighten the tether and ensure it is secure. For the specific method of fixing and tightening upper tether of the child restraint system, strictly follow the instructions provided by the child restraint system manufacturer.
- Before installing the child restraint system that uses an upper tether, the head restraint must first be removed. This will limit or prevent interaction of the head restraint with the upper tether. In addition, any luggage cover present must first be removed.

2. PREPARATION FOR DRIVING

WARNING

- After installing a child restraint system, never adjust the seat.
- It is recommended child restraint systems are installed on the rear outboard seats.
- Never fix more than one child restraint system to one set of anchor points.
- Do not allow the upper tether to cross or pass the head restraint and be sure to tighten the tether after installing. Incorrect installation may cause serious injury to children.
- For the vehicle equipped with a luggage cover on the luggage compartment, the luggage cover must be removed before installing child restraint system to anchor points.
- If anchor point device is damaged or overloaded during an accident, please go to authorized service station for inspection and repair immediately.
- If the driver's seat interferes with the correct installation of the child restraint system on the rear seat behind the driver seat, install the child restraint system on the rear seat behind the front passenger.
- Do not use child restraint system anchor bracket to secure items other than child restraint system. We will not be liable for any accident caused this way.
- If the child restraint system is not correctly fixed in place, the child or passengers may face serious injury or even death during a collision.
- Make sure the top tether is securely latched, and check if the child restraint system is secured by pushing and pulling it in different directions. Follow the installation instructions provided by the child restraint system manufacturer. If the child restraint system is not correctly installed, the child may face serious injury or even death during a collision.

WARNING

- If the child restraint system on the rear seat interferes with the front seat, after all correct adjustments, do not install the child restraint system in that seat position; The child and front passenger may face serious injury or even death during a collision.
- Whether the child restraint system is in use or not in use, it should always be secure and fixed properly to the seat; Do not place unsecure child restraint systems on any passenger seats.

Enabling and Disabling Front Passenger Airbag (If Equipped)



The airbag enabling/disabling switch is located on the passenger side instrument panel and is visible when front passenger door is opened.

■ Disabling front passenger airbag

Turn the switch to OFF position while pulling the switch outward, the front passenger airbag is disabled and the disabling status indicator will come on.

■ Enabling front passenger airbag

Turn the switch from OFF to ON, re-enable the front passenger airbag and the enabling status indicator will come on. It is now safe to sit in the front passenger seat.

Airbag status indicator



1 Disabling status indication

2 Enabling status indication

WARNING

- Remember to subsequently enable the front passenger airbag when an adult occupant is seated in the front passenger seat. It is the driver's responsibility to confirm the passenger airbag status is correct for the occupant in the front passenger seat.
- In the event a rearward facing child restraint system needs to be installed on the front passenger seat, the front passenger airbag must be disabled. Otherwise, it may cause serious injury or even death to young children in the event of an accident.

2. PREPARATION FOR DRIVING

Reminder for Children Staying in Rear Seat

Introduction

This function is based on the active detection of millimeter wave radar .After the vehicle is powered off and locked, it detects whether there is a child in the car. If there is child, the system alarms to alert customers and pedestrians around the vehicle. The alarm is alerted by a double flash and a siren.

After locking the car, the system will immediately begin to determine whether there is a child in the car. If a child is detected, an initial alert will be sent ten seconds after locking the car, and the whole process will last five seconds or until canceled.

After the end of the initial reminder, if the door is still closed and the system detects that there are still children in the car, the upgrade reminder will be activated at 85 seconds after the end of the initial reminder; The upgrade reminder signal takes every 60 seconds as a reminder cycle. Within a cycle, the signal of yellow double flashing light and siren lasts for 30 seconds, and then pauses for 30 seconds in this cycle. Repeat until the reminder is cancelled

When the first upgrade reminder is triggered for more than 5 minutes and a child is detected in the car, a three-level reminder will be triggered, and your CAR APP or mobile phone SMS will receive a child forget reminder, which is as follows: "Dear user, it is detected people and pets left in your car. Please return to your car promptly".

Temporary system suspension

The system allows temporary suspension. IN the Vehicle comfort menu inside the vehicle center, there is a temporary off switch for this feature. Turn off the reminding function once through this switch when there is no need to remind temporarily. However, when the vehicle starts and drives next time, the switch will return to "ON" state by default.

READ

Please do not leave children alone in the car.

3-1. Key Information	Audio Buttons 101
Key Information 77	Voice Recognition Function (If Equipped)..... 102
Replacing Key Battery 78	Phone-link..... 102
Effective Range 79	
Keyless Entry 81	3-6. Air Conditioning System
Vehicle Security 82	Automatic Air Conditioning 105
Immobilizer System 83	Mode Adjustment 110
Smart Key Vehicle Locating..... 84	A/C Setting..... 110
Remote Starting for Smart Key 84	Air Outlets Airflow Control 111
3-2. Doors	Automatic Cabin Ventilation and Automatic Cabin Cleaning (If Equipped) 111
Door Unlocking/Locking 85	Air Quality Control System (If Equipped) 112
Door Mechanical Switch..... 87	Air Conditioning Cooling Operation..... 112
Electric Rear Door Child- protector Lock..... 88	Air Conditioning Heating Operation..... 114
3-3. Windows	Auxiliary Fascia Armrest Box Cooling Function..... 115
Power Windows 89	3-7. Fragrance System
Window Remote Control Function 90	Fragrance System (If Equipped) 115
Window Jam Protection Function (If Equipped)..... 91	3-8. Wireless Charging
3-4. Power Moon Roof	Wireless Charging (If Equipped) 116
Power Moon Roof 92	3-9. Assist Grips and Coat hooks
Moon Roof Remote Control Function (If Equipped) 94	Assist Grips..... 117
Moon Roof Jam Protection Function (If Equipped) 94	Coat hooks..... 118
3-5. Audio System	
Audio View 95	
Vehicle Center 96	

INTERIOR FUNCTION

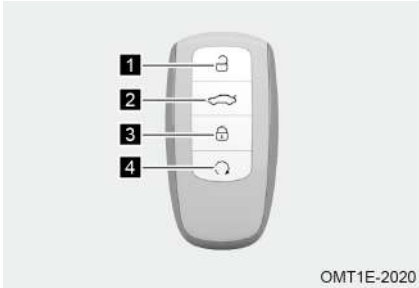
3-10.Hooks		3-14.Hood	
Hooks.....	118	Opening/closing the hood.....	125
3-11.Storage Space		3-15.Back Door	
Storage Space.....	119	Power Back Door	126
3-12.Power Outlet		Back Door Emergency Opening.....	130
Power Outlet	123	3-16.Fuel Tank Cap	
USB Port	124	Fuel Tank Cap	130
3-13.Sun Visors , Vanity Mirrors and Ticket Clips			
Sun Visors, Vanity Mirrors and TicketClips	124		

3-1. Key Information

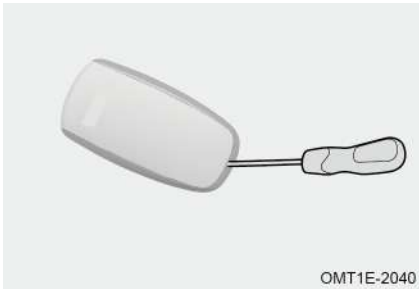
Key Information

Smart key

Smart key is used to lock/unlock doors remotely and open back door within about 20 m (within clear view) of the vehicle.



- 1** Unlock button
- 2** Back door opener button
- 3** Lock button
- 4** Remote starting button



The mechanical key built into the smart key can be used to lock/unlock doors in emergency after prying off smart key cover using a flathead screwdriver with the tip taped and taking out mechanical key. After using, return it to original place for easy-to-carry (for details, refer to "Door").

Function limit

- In the following conditions, the smart key may not work properly:
 - There are more than one smart keys being used nearby.
 - The distance between vehicle and smart key is over 20 m.
 - The smart key is in contact with, or is covered by a metallic object.
 - The smart key is placed near an electrical appliance (such as mobile phone, personal computer).
 - The key is near wireless communication devices that have the similar frequency with the remote control key (such as portable radio).
 - The key is near facilities that generate strong radio waves (such as TV tower, radio station, power station, airport, train station).

3. INTERIOR FUNCTION

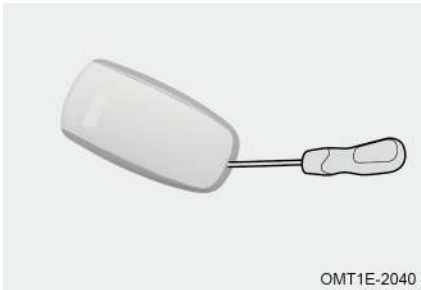
CAUTION

- This product is a low frequency radio device and can be disturbed by various radio services or radiation from industrial, scientific and medical applications.
- Do not change the transmitting frequency, increase the transmitter power (including installation of the wireless RF power amplifier), or install an external or other transmitting antenna without permission.
- When using it, do not interfere with legal wireless communications; In case of interference, immediately stop using and take measures to eliminate the interference before continuing to use it.

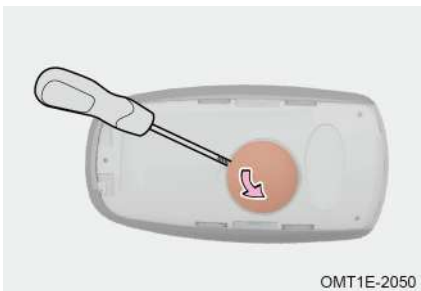
■ If any of the following conditions occurs, the smart key battery may be low or depleted:

- The remote control distance gradually decreases.
- Remote control function does not work even without interference.
- Instrument cluster prompts "Smart key battery power is low".

Replacing Key Battery



Step 1: Pry off smart key cover using a flathead screwdriver with the tip taped;



Step 2: Pry off battery cover and battery using a flathead screwdriver with the tip taped;

Step 3: Install new battery with the positive (+) side up;

Step 4: Install battery cover;

Step 5: After replacing the battery, check if the smart key operates properly. If the smart key still does not function correctly, please contact authorized service station for inspection and repair as soon as possible;

ENVIRONMENTAL PROTECTION

Used lithium battery cannot be handled as general household rubbish, please handle used battery according to the local regulations and provisions regarding environmental protection.

READ

- Make sure that positive and negative terminals of battery are placed correctly.
- Smart key battery model: 3V-CR2032 lithium battery.

CAUTION

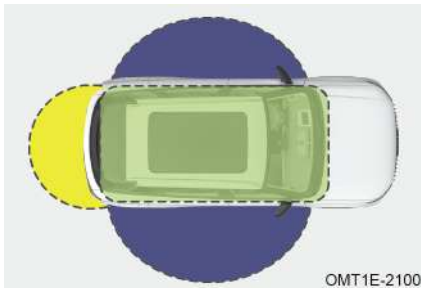
- Only use the recommended battery type.
- Do not bend electrode and terminal when installing battery.
- Make sure your hands are dry and away from water when replacing the battery.
- Do not touch new battery with oily hands, as this may cause battery corrosion.
- Do not touch or move any components inside the smart key, or its functions may not work properly.
- There may be some difficulties when replacing key battery, that might lead to damage if you are replacing it by yourself, so it is recommended that you replace it at authorized service station.

WARNING


Take special care to prevent children from swallowing the removed battery or other components, otherwise it may cause death or serious injury to the child.

Effective Range


Detectable area



OMT1E-2100

 Starting or switching power area

Start or switch power mode when smart key is the vehicle.

 Unlocking/locking area

Unlock/lock the doors when smart key is within effective range of door high performance low-frequency antenna.

3. INTERIOR FUNCTION

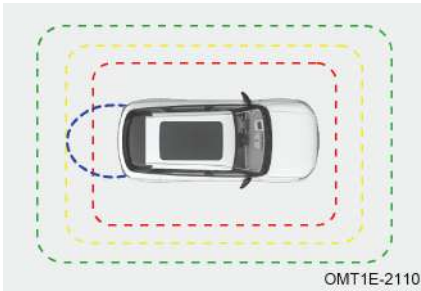
Opening back door area

Open the back door when smart key is within effective range of luggage compartment outer low-frequency antenna.

READ

Low-frequency antenna can detect areas within 1.5 m away from smart key. Therefore, when using keyless entry or ENGINE START STOP function, ensure that distance between the smart key and low-frequency antenna meets the requirement.

Automatically sensing area (if equipped)



Smart turning on courtesy lights area

Approach the vehicle when carrying smart key on your person, the courtesy lights will turn on.

Away from locking area

Leave the vehicle when carrying smart key on your person, doors automatically lock.

Approaching to unlocking area

Approach the vehicle when carrying smart key on your person, doors automatically unlock.

Smart opening back door area

Approach the vehicle when carrying smart key on your person, doors can not automatically unlock/lock (for details about back door sensing open function, refer to "Back Door").

READ

- Please leave the vehicle after the four doors and back door are closed, otherwise the automatic sensing lock function may not work properly.
- The smart key may be affected by interference from the surround environment and may affect functions like keyless entry, ENGINE START STOP, courtesy, approach unlocking, away locking etc. When the functions are abnormal, please use other methods (such as manual unlocking, remote unlocking) to unlock/lock or start the vehicle.

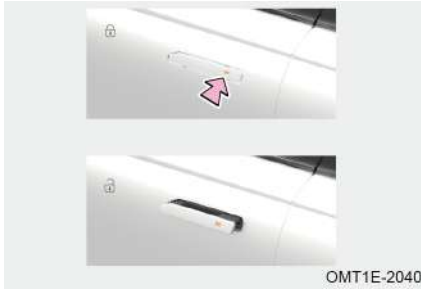
Function limit

- Smart key may be not detected in the following conditions:
 - Smart key is in luggage compartment.
 - When locking doors, smart key is too close to the window or roof.

- Check if the smart key is placed together with strong electromagnetic interference sources (such as: portable power source, interphone or other phones etc.).

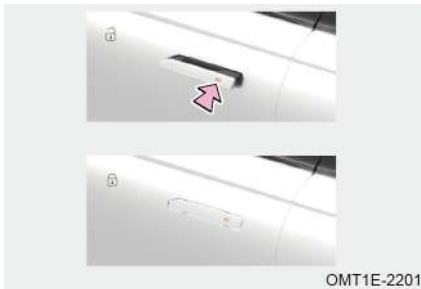
Keyless Entry

Unlocking doors



Bring smart key and touch the sensing area of hidden door handle. After system recognizes unlocking signal, the hidden door handle extends automatically, then turn signal light flashes twice and the door is unlocked.

Locking doors



Bring smart key and touch the sensing area of hidden door handle. After system recognizes locking signal, the hidden door handle retracts automatically, then turn signal light flashes once and the door is locked.

READ

- Turn vehicle power supply to ON mode, turn on the close to welcome guests function by Audio System - Quick Control.
- Sensing lock/unlock function is closed after the vehicle is locked for 3 days, restart the engine will restore sensing lock/unlock function.
- When the head unit is set to independent driver door unlocking, only the driver side hidden door handle extends automatically after vehicle is unlocked.

WARNING

Before hidden door handle retracts automatically, make sure that the area is cleared and that no body part of any person nearby is in a position that may be pinched.

3. INTERIOR FUNCTION

CAUTION

- Do not put smart key next to computer, cordless mouse, phone, etc. doing so may not affect the lock/unlock sensor.
- Smart key sensing lock function is only operated when vehicle power is switched to OFF mode, all doors and back door are completely closed and smart key is not stored in vehicle.
- After leaving the vehicle and closing all doors and back door, smart key is left in vehicle or there is no smart key around vehicle within approximately 2.5 m, smart key sensing active lock function will not be activated.
- If the smart key is over 2.5 m away, the turn signal lights do not flash and the horn is not hear (signals successful locking), check if the vehicle is locked.
- After smart key sensing active lock/unlock function is activated and if smart key keeps near the vehicle, vehicle will lock automatically for more than 3 minutes, if the key still is in there for another 3 minutes, for the purpose of power saving, smart key sensing function will be temporarily closed, the function can only be activated after opening any door or back door and then closing all doors and back door.

Vehicle Security

Locking operation



■ Locking mode

Turn vehicle power supply to OFF mode, hood, four doors and back door are closed, perform locking operation of door (For details, refer to "Smart Key" in this section), and enter locked state.

Successful locking prompt: Turn signal light flashes once and anti-theft horn sounds once.

Unsuccessful locking prompt: Turn signal light flashes twice and anti-theft horn does not sound.

■ Secondary locking mode

After deactivating vehicle locking, if four doors and back door are not operated, the vehicle will lock automatically and become locked after 30 s.

READ

- Locking prompt is set in audio system. For details, refer to "Audio System".
- After deactivating vehicle fortifying, if any of the four doors and back door is opened, the vehicle will exit secondary locking mode.

CAUTION

- Vehicle locking cannot be set if vehicle power is not switched to OFF mode.
- If four doors are closed and back door and hood is not closed completely, the central lock will lock once but vehicle locking is not set successfully.
- If back door and hood is closed and any door is not closed, the central lock will lock and then unlock and vehicle locking is not set successfully.

Fortifying deactivation mode

Perform unlocking operation of door to exit locking mode.

Successful deactivating prompt:
Turn signal light flashes twice.

Alarm mode

When the vehicle is locked and invalid entry is detected (such as any door, hood or back door is opened invalidly, alarm will be activated), the vehicle will enter cyclic alarm mode, anti-theft horn sounds (if equipped) and turn signal light flashes; Press unlock button on smart key or switch vehicle power to ON mode to deactivate alarm.

Immobilizer System**Engine immobilizer system**

Smart key has a built-in transponder chip. If the smart key is not pre-matched into engine anti-theft module, the built-in chip will stop engine from starting. In the following conditions, the engine immobilizer system may not work properly:

- Smart key is in contact with a metallic object.
- Do not modify or remove engine immobilizer system.
- Smart key is too close to or contacts smart key (key with a built-in transponder chip) of another vehicle.

3. INTERIOR FUNCTION

CAUTION

- Do not match the smart key by yourself, otherwise the engine immobilizer system may not work properly.
- If the engine fails to start, but the starter works normally, it may be due to the interference of engine immobilizer system, please contact authorized service station immediately for inspection and repair immediately.

Vehicle anti-theft system

When vehicle is locked and invalid entry is detected, the vehicle anti-theft system will send sound alarm (if equipped) and light alarm, alerting owner that the vehicle is in an invalid opening state.

READ

- The vehicle anti-theft system will not be enabled if the doors are locked by mechanical key. It is recommended to lock doors by smart key.
- After locking doors by smart key, the vehicle anti-theft system will be triggered if front left door is unlocked and opened by mechanical key.
- To prevent unexpected triggering of vehicle anti-theft system and vehicle theft, before leaving the vehicle, check that nobody is in vehicle, all doors and windows are closed properly and the vehicle is locked correctly.
- When vehicle anti-theft system is in anti-theft state, vehicle anti-theft system can be deactivated by pressing unlock button on smart key or if the vehicle starts successfully.

Smart Key Vehicle Locating

Press lock button on smart key continuously twice within several seconds, horn sounds 6 times, at the same time, turn signal lights flash 10 times, this allows you to find your vehicle easily.

Remote Starting for Smart Key

When vehicle power mode is OFF, vehicle is locked and smart key is not in vehicle, press and hold lock button or remote starting button on smart key for several seconds to start it remotely and air conditioning operates automatically at the same time; The vehicle will automatically shut off after vehicle is started remotely for 10 minutes.

 READ

- Ensure there is no one in the vehicle (including the driver) when starting the vehicle remotely.
- The vehicle can be unlocked but can not be locked by using remote start.
- Distance when starting vehicle remotely using smart key should not exceed normal operating distance of smart key.
- When single time for starting vehicle remotely is 10 minutes, allow vehicle to start remotely twice, if the two starting has been used, after vehicle power is turned to ON mode, remote start can be used.
- After vehicle is started remotely, some function cannot be operated (such as headlight combination switch, wiper combination switch, audio function), depress brake pedal when carrying smart key on your person, quit remote mode to restore normal operation.

3-2. Doors

Door Unlocking/Locking

Independent driver door unlocking



OMT1E-2140

With vehicle in READY state, turn on Independent Driver Door Unlocking through Audio System - Vehicle Center - Vehicle Settings.

Only the driver door is unlocked when smart key unlock button is pressed for the first time. Other three doors are unlocked when smart key unlock button is pressed for the second time.

Automatic locking



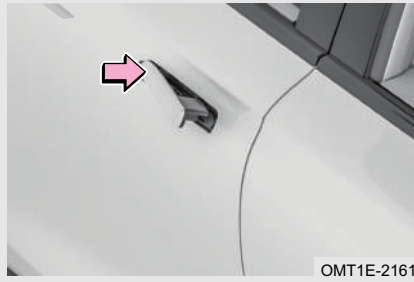
OMT1E-2140

With vehicle in READY state, turn on Automatic lock through Audio System - Vehicle Center - Vehicle Settings; Doors are automatically locked when four doors, hood and back door are closed and vehicle speed is more than 15 km/h.

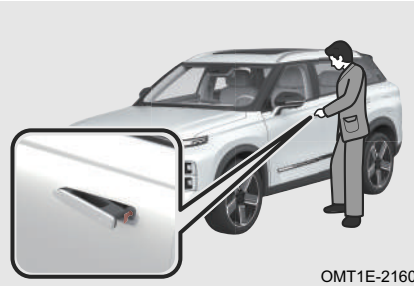
Door Mechanical Switch

Vehicle can not be locked/unlocked electrically when battery is depleted , so in this case, the doors can be unlocked/locked with door mechanical switch.

Locking/unlocking front left door manually

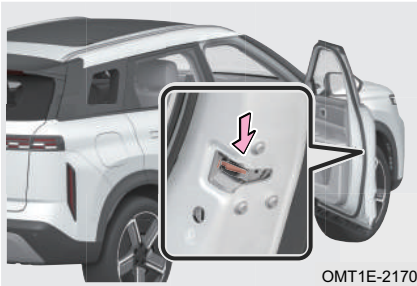


Step 1: Press and hold the front area of the driver door outside handle to open the hidden door handle.



Step 2: Pull the door handle, insert the mechanical key into the keyhole inside the door handle, turn clockwise to lock the door, counterclockwise to unlock the door.

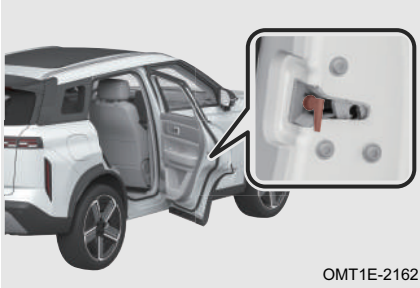
Locking front right door



Open the door, move the button downward to lock door; Pull the door handle to make sure the door is locked.

3. INTERIOR FUNCTION

Locking rear doors manually



Vehicle cannot be locked electrically when battery is depleted or under similar conditions, in this case, the doors can be locked with emergency locking function.

Open the door, insert the mechanical key into the mechanical switch hole, turn the key counterclockwise to lock the rear left door, and turn the key clockwise to lock the door. Pull the door handle to make sure the door is locked.

READ

- If above problem occurs, please go to authorized service station for inspection and repair as soon as possible.
- When the vehicle is locked in emergency due to power off, please check if the doors are locked successfully one by one after locking. If not, please go to authorized service station for inspection and repair as soon as possible.

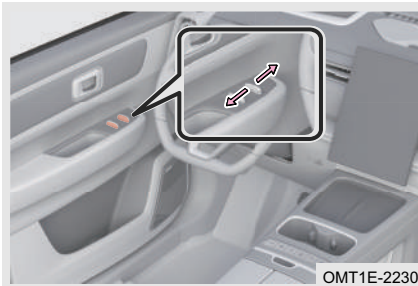
Electric Rear Door Child-protector Lock



Click vehicle window lock button through Audio System - Vehicle Center -Quick Control to turn on/off Child-protector Lock function.

⚠ WARNING

- The child lock is independent and cannot replace the central lock mechanism in any case.
- When a child is seated on the second row seats, always lock child locks to prevent the second row doors being opened accidentally while driving.
- After child lock is locked, in the event of a collision or other accident, if there is someone trapped inside vehicle and the second row door cannot be opened from the inside, please open it from outside the vehicle.
- In hot weather, if vehicle is powered off and all doors and windows are closed, do not allow any animal or child in vehicle alone. Otherwise, even if it is a short time, it may cause serious injury or even death due to sharp temperature rise.

3-3. Windows**Power Windows****Power window switch****Automatic mode**

Operate the switch backward to make window go up automatically; Operate it again to stop moving the window.

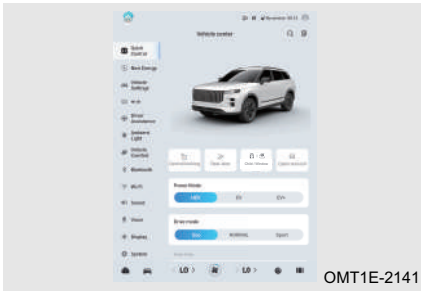
Operate the switch forward to make window go down automatically; Operate it again to stop moving the window.

Mist mode

Operate the switch backward and hold it to make window go up, and window stops moving when the switch is released.

Operate the switch forward and hold it to make window go down, and window stops moving when the switch is released.

3. INTERIOR FUNCTION



With vehicle in READY state, click vehicle window lock button through Audio System - Vehicle Center - Quick Control to turn on/off passenger side window OFF function.

After passenger side window OFF function is turned on, passenger side windows only can be operated by driver side window switch (this function is recommended when there is a child in vehicle).

READ

- Only vehicles with window jam protection function have one-touch window raising function.
- At the moment of starting engine, window up and down operation will be suspended to provide large current for engine starting.
- If the front door is not opened within 1 minutes while vehicle power is switched to OFF mode, the power window can be used.
- After leaving vehicle in low temperature environment for a long time, when operating power window switch, window glass cannot be fully opened or closed. In this case, release the switch and then operate again, repeat 3-5 cycles to recover.

WARNING

- To avoid personal injury, it is driver's responsibility to guide all passengers to operate power window up/down switch and prevent children using, meanwhile, it is recommended to ensure that vehicle power has been switched to OFF mode or non-mechanical device is closed when leaving the vehicle.
- Take extra care to close windows, failure to do so may cause serious injury! Models without window jam protection function, when window glass rises, passenger's body may be caught, resulting in serious injury. Models with window jam protection function, jam protection function can be activated in jam protection area to protect passenger. However, for the thin or soft objects, jam protection function may be not activated, resulting in serious injury.

Window Remote Control Function

Remote control window down function

When vehicle power is switched to OFF mode, four doors are closed and unlock button on key is pressed and hold, windows of four doors will go down

automatically. If unlock button on key is released or any door is opened in this process, window will stop going down.

Remote control window up function (if equipped)

While vehicle power is switched to OFF mode and the hood, four doors and back door are closed, press lock button on smart key, the vehicle will lock and the window glass of four doors will rise up automatically. Unlock/lock doors in automatic window up process and windows will stop moving.

READ

If abnormal closing occurs during remote control one-touch window up, the turn signal lights will flash once and the horn will sound 5 times continuously in order to alarm customer that window has not closed properly.

WARNING

Before using remote control up window function, take extra care to see the vehicle clearly and make sure that passengers cannot be caught by window.

Window Jam Protection Function (If Equipped)

Jam protection function

During one-touch window up or remote control one-touch window up, if obstacle is encountered in jam protection area and resistance exceeds a certain value, window will stop rising and go down slightly; To close window, move away obstacle and operate again.

Canceling jam protection function

If obstacle is encountered twice continuously when rising the window, the window will stop rising, jam protection function will be canceled. Make sure there are no obstacles when the window is closed.

Manual learning function

If one-touch window up function and jam protection function can not operate, perform the following steps to restore function. Make sure that there are no obstacles within window range during learning.

Step 1: Switch vehicle power to ON mode;

Step 2: Operate window switch manually to fully close window, and hold it there for 2 s , then release the switch;

Step 3: Operate window switch manually to fully open window, and hold it there for 2 s , then release the switch.;

Step 4: Operate window switch manually to fully close window, then try to operate auto window up function;

Step 5: If window cannot close automatically, please repeat the above steps to set.

3. INTERIOR FUNCTION

READ

- If auto window up function cannot be restored after repeating the above steps, please go to authorized service station for inspection and repair as soon as possible.
- When driving over roads with potholes or uneven surfaces, gravity may affect door system unexpectedly. In this case, window may reverse and go down while rising by one-touch window up function. This is a small probability event and normal.

CAUTION

- If disconnecting battery cable and then reconnecting it, auto window up function and jam protection function will not work.
- Jam protection function is a kind of window safety protection function. Never try to active it repeatedly using various objects, in improper methods or even with some parts of body. Falling to do so may damage window regulation system mechanism or injure personal accidentally.
- When closing window, even if it is equipped with jam protection function, always keep window close area is clear. Otherwise, if system encounters a thin object and cannot sense it, jam protection will not work. If someone's hand or finger is caught, extremely serious injury will be caused.

3-4. Power Moon Roof

Power Moon Roof


Introduction


Use the overhead switch to open and close the moon roof and tilt it up and down.

Usage method



■ Opening/closing sunshade

Push "  " switch backward to slide sunshade to middle position. Push the sunshade switch again to slide sunshade to full open position.

When sunshade is in full open condition, push "  " forward to slide the sunshade to middle position. Push the sunshade switch again to slide sunshade to full closed position.

■ Tilting up/closing moon roof

Push "↔" switch backward when moon roof is closed, the moon roof will tilt up.

Push "↔" switch forward when moon roof tilts up, the moon roof will close.

■ Opening/closing moon roof

Push "↔" switch backward when moon roof is closed, the moon roof will tilt up, push the switch backward again, the moon roof will slide to open.

Push "↔" switch forward when moon roof is opened, the moon roof will slide to close.

CAUTION

- If the moon roof jam protection function fails, initial memory position may be lost, and it will be necessary to recalibrate position.
- If there is no response from moon roof during voice control or local button operation, it needs to be re-initialized.
- When moon roof is frozen or covered with snow, forcibly opening moon roof will damage the moon roof glass and the motor.
- If there is water on moon roof after raining, to prevent water from flowing into the vehicle when opening moon roof, always wipe off water or tilt moon roof up to remove these water before opening it.
- Regularly clean the dust and debris in moon roof rails and strips with water; After vehicle washing or raining, completely wipe the water on the moon roof glass before using.
- If you find there is a false jam protection, please go to authorized service station for inspection and repair as soon as possible.
- The sunshade cannot be closed when the moon roof glass is opening; The moon roof mechanism will be damaged if the sunshade is forcibly closed.

WARNING

Before closing moon roof, take extra care to see the vehicle clearly and make sure that passengers cannot be caught by it.

Method of initializing moon roof (if equipped)

When moon roof is closed fully, push "↔" switch forward for more than 10 s.

CAUTION

If moon roof cannot be initialized, please go to authorized service station to perform it by after-sales personnel.

3. INTERIOR FUNCTION

Moon Roof Remote Control Function (If Equipped)

Moon roof remote control open function

While vehicle power is switched to OFF mode, four doors are closed and unlock button on smart key is pressed and hold for a few seconds, sunshade is opened and then moon roof is opened; Press the lock button or touch the lock sensing area while carrying smart key on your person during opening moon roof, moon roof stops moving.

Moon roof remote control close function

While vehicle power is switched to OFF mode, four doors are closed and unlock button on smart key is pressed, the vehicle will be locked and moon roof is closed; Press the lock button or touch the lock sensing area with fingers when carrying smart key on your person during closing moon roof, moon roof stops moving.

Moon Roof Jam Protection Function (If Equipped)

Jam protection function

During moon roof glass is closed, it will automatically return under certain resistance. When jam protection occurs in horizontal position, the moon roof glass will return to half open position. When jam protection occurs in vertical position, it will return to tilt up position.

 WARNING
--

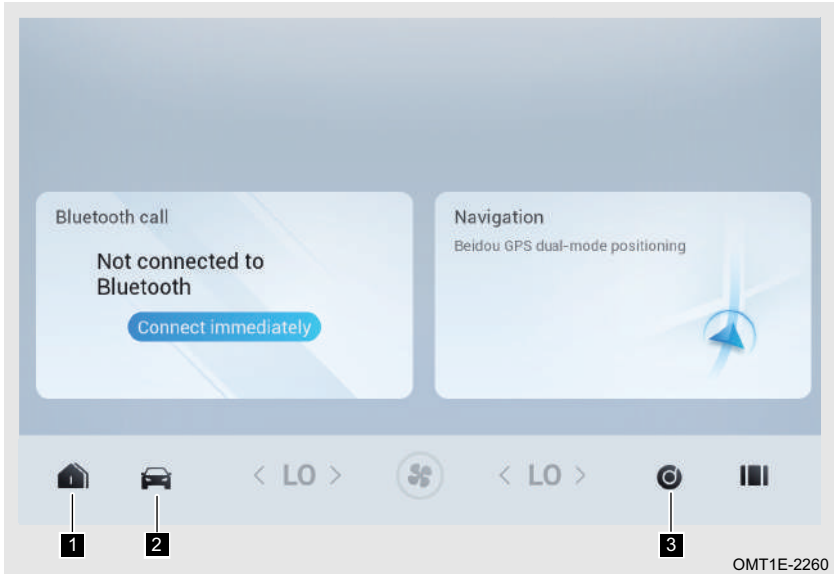
Do not pass body parts or objects through moon roof during opening and closing, even if it is equipped with jam protection function.
--

Overheat protection function

Do not operate the moon roof frequently in a short time, otherwise the motor will overheat or enter the overheat protection state. After that, the moon roof will not respond to key action. The overheat protection will be automatically canceled after the motor is cooled.

3-5. Audio System

Audio View

**1** Home page button

Click to enter system main screen.
Click again to enter vehicle application screen.

2 Vehicle setting button

Click to enter the vehicle setting screen for relevant function settings.

3 Multimedia button

Click to enter media screen, including radio/DAB radio (if equipped), music, images and video.

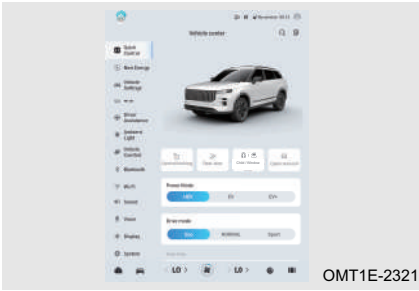
 READ

- Some models of radio support RDS function.
- Function buttons are different depending on the vehicle configuration. Please refer to the actual vehicle configuration.

3. INTERIOR FUNCTION

Vehicle Center

Quick Control



Central Lock: Unlocking/locking doors.

Rear Tailgate: Opening/closing.

Chil Lock/ Window Lock: Disable ON/OFF of passenger side window/electronic child lock.

Sunroof Open: Opening/closing.

Power Mode: HEV, EV, EV+.

Drive Mode: ECO, Normal, Sport.

View the four-wheel drive energy flow.

Close To Unlocking, Keep Away From Locking: ON/OFF.

Smart Key Sensing Tailgate Open: ON/OFF.

Headlight delay: ON/OFF.

Intelligent high beam assist: ON/OFF.

Close to welcome guests: ON/OFF.

Headlight height adjustment: 0, 1, 2, 3.

New Energy



Energy Consumption List: Click to query the data of total mileage/total driving mileage/recent 50 km/since startup/since reset.

Energy Flow: Display current energy flow condition of vehicle.

Slow Charger Unlock: Click to unlock the slow charging gun.

Charging Management: Set Charge Now/Charge Reservation.

External Discharge: ON/OFF.

Power Saving Mode: Set Initia/Smart/Forced.

Book A Trip: Turn it to ON/OFF. After it is turned on, you can set the appointment trip time individually.

Pure Electric Mileage Display: Set Battery Level/Standard Mileage/Dynamic Mileage.

ECO Mode: ON/OFF.

Energy Recovery Intensity: Set Low/Medium/High.

Driving Distance Display: Set Total Distance/HEV Distance/EV Distance.

Disclaimer: Click to check the disclaimer.

Vehicle Settings



Steering wheel button customization.

Opening height setting of rear door: 1.30 m - 1.80 m.

Arming reminder: Light, Lights and Speakers.

Automatic lock: ON/OFF.

Main driver unlocked alone: ON/OFF.

Maintenance Tips: ON/OFF.

Maintenance mileage reset.

Wireless Charging: ON/OFF.

Forget reminder: ON/OFF.

Steering force mode associated with driving mode: Mid/Sport.

Drive mode memory: ON/OFF.

Brake pitch control: ON/OFF; Brake Pitch Control Sensitivity can be set individually after turning off.

Braking feel linked to driving mode: Set it to ON/OFF; Brake Sensation Mode can be set individually after turning off.

HUD



HUD heads up display: ON/OFF.

Settings such as brightness, height, HUD information display, restore default can be performed after it turns on.

Steering Wheel Adjustment HUD: ON/OFF.

Snow mode: ON/OFF.

3. INTERIOR FUNCTION

Driver Assistance



Intelligent navigation exiting reminder: ON/OFF.

Departure warning system: ON/OFF.

Overspeed alarm: ON/OFF, and set speed limit value.

Intelligent avoidance system: ON/OFF.

Forward collision warning system: ON/OFF.

Forward collision warning system sensitivity: Far, Standard, Near.

Automatic emergency braking system: ON/OFF.

Reverse lateral emergency braking: ON/OFF.

Lane assist alarm: ON/OFF.

Lane departure reminder mode setting: sound, vibration, sound+vibration.

Lane assist sensitivity: low, high.

Lane departure prevention: ON/OFF.

Emergency lane keeping: ON/OFF.

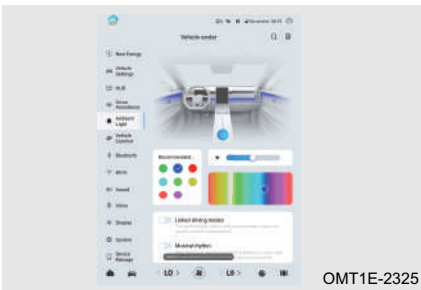
Door opening alert: ON/OFF.

Blind spot detection system: ON/OFF.

Rear collision warning: ON/OFF.

Tired driving reminder: Close, 1, 1.5, 2, 2.5, 3, 3.5, 4.

Ambient Light



It sets ON/OFF of ambient light; select recommended color, adjust the brightness and color.

Linked driving modes: ON/OFF.

Music rhythm: ON/OFF.

Vehicle Comfort



OMT1E-2326

Driver side seat can be adjusted.

Seat/rear mirror position: Driving position, Rest position, Alternate location.

Seat Portable Entry/Exit: ON/OFF.

Rear Mirror Adjustment: Adjust the rear view mirror through the buttons on steering wheel.

Automatic folding of exterior mirrors: Set it to ON/OFF.

Automatic adjustment of rearview mirror when reversing: Set it to CLOSE/Both sides/Left only/Right only.

Bluetooth



OMT1E-2329

Bluetooth: ON/OFF.

After Bluetooth turns to ON, Bluetooth settings are available.

WiFi



OMT1E-2328

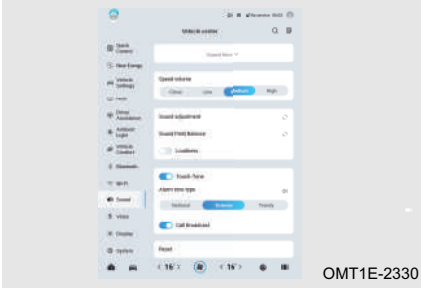
WiFi Switch: ON/OFF.

Network notification: ON/OFF.

HotSpot Switch: ON/OFF.

3. INTERIOR FUNCTION

Sound



Sound of navigation, voice, media, bluetooth music, phone, alarm, boot music, default sound can be set.

Speed volume: Close, Low, Normal, High.

Set the sound adjustment and sound field balance.

Loudness: ON/OFF.

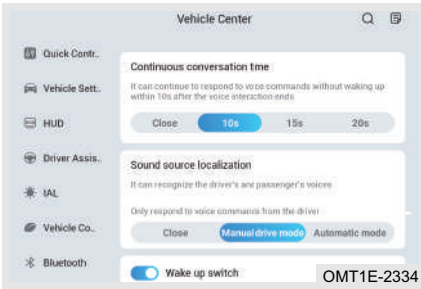
Touch-tone: ON/OFF.

Alarm tone type: National, Science, Trendy.

Call broadcast: ON/OFF.

Set to restore default.

Voice

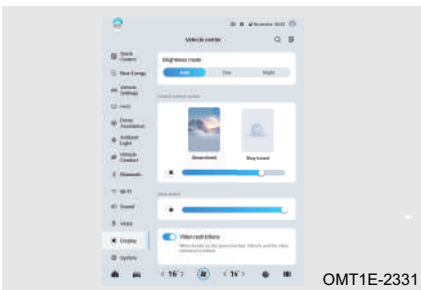


Continuous conversation time: Close, 10s, 15s, 20s.

Sound source localization: Close, Manual drive mode, Automatic mode.

Wake up switch: ON/OFF.

Display



Brightness mode: Auto, Day, Night.

Double-screen Theme Linkage: ON/OFF.

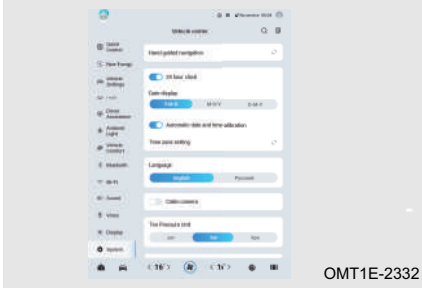
Set the central control screen and dashboard.

Video restrictions: ON/OFF.

Clean the screen.

Set to restore default.

System



OMT1E-2332

View the gesture navigation.

24 hour clock: ON/OFF.

Automatic calibration date and time: ON/OFF.

Meter Fuel Consumption Unit: km/L, L/100km.

View the version information and storage.

Set to restore default.

READ

The settings are different depending on the buttons of vehicle. Please refer to the actual vehicle.

Audio Buttons



OMT1E-2350

Customization button "☆": This button can be customized in audio system - Vehicle Center - Vehicle Settings.

Voice recognition button "🗣️": Short press to enable the local voice recognition function; Long press to enable the Siri function or CarLife voice function (need to be connected with phone).

"O": Short press to pause while music/radio is playing.

"🔊+": Press to increase volume.

"🔊-": Press to decrease volume.

"<": Short press to switch to previous track in music mode; Short press to switch to previous station in radio mode; Hang up the call.

">": Short press to switch to next track in music mode; Short press to switch to next station in radio mode; Answer the call.

3. INTERIOR FUNCTION

Voice Recognition Function (If Equipped)

Voice recognition function can be enabled using the following methods when audio system is turned on:

Method 1: Directly say the wake word to enable the voice recognition function.

Method 2: Short press the voice recognition button "Ⓜ" on steering wheel to enable the voice recognition function.

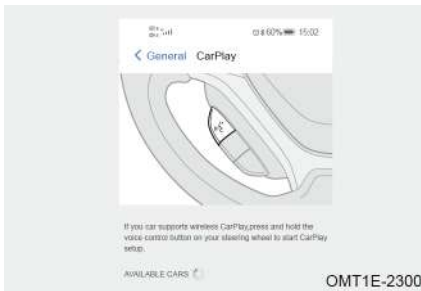
Phone-link

Apple CarPlay (iOS)

■ Connecting method



Step 1: Turn Listen for "Hey Siri" and Press Home for Siri to ON on Settings (Siri&search) screen of phone;

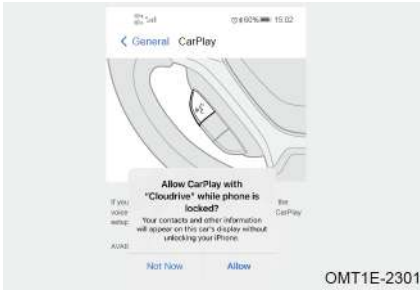


Step 2: Turn CarPlay to ON on Settings (General) screen of phone;



Step 3: Connect USB port and phone using original data cable;

Note: Only USB port "Ⓜ" supports Apple CarPlay screencast function.



Step 4: Select Allow on CarPlay permission request screen;

Step 5: Enter Apple CarPlay screencast screen.

■ Wireless carplay connection (if equipped)

Step 1: Turn on hotspot on Apple phone, audio head unit WIFI interface is connected to phone hotspot.

Step 2: Connect Apple phone to Bluetooth on audio head unit.

Step 3: Select Carplay according to interface that pops up on audio head unit or phone.

Step 4: Make pairing connection according to pop-up interface on phone; after connection is successfully, audio head unit displays carplay interface.

Step 5: Enter Apple CarPlay screencast screen.

Android Auto (Android)

■ Connecting method




Step 1: Install the Google Framework;

Step 2: Perform the installation in Google Play and run Android Auto, install all supporting softwares according to the system prompt and update the existing program, and then Android Auto can run normal after completing the update.

3. INTERIOR FUNCTION



Step 3: Connect USB port and phone using original data cable;

Note: Only USB port "  " supports Android Auto screencast function. Before phone-link, please turn on the developer permissions in the phone settings.



Step 4: If this phone is connected to the vehicle for the first time (a prompt will pop up on the head unit, please operate according to the prompt on the mobile phone, stop the vehicle and apply the parking brake), then the first connection setting can be completed;

Step 5: Click "Android Auto" on the audio main screen to enter "Android Auto" mapping interface.

■ Wireless Android Auto connection (if equipped)

Step 1: Turn on wireless Android Auto switch on the phone.

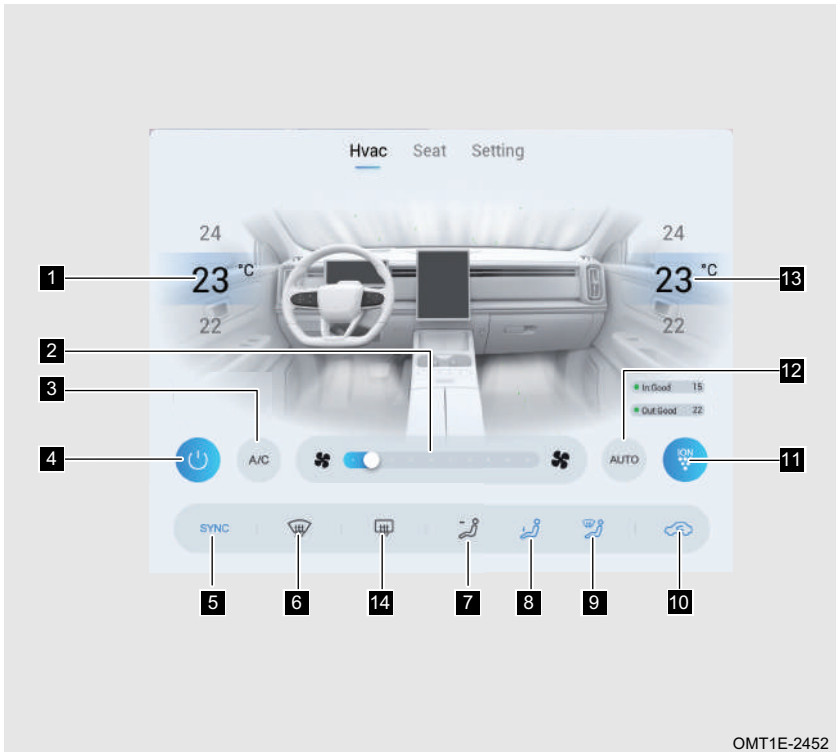
Step 2: Turn on Wi-Fi hotspot on head unit.

Step 3: Perform Bluetooth pairing between head unit and mobile phone.

Step 4: After Bluetooth connection is successful, a reminder to start wireless Android Auto will pop up on head unit, click "START" to complete wireless Android Auto connection.

3-6. Air Conditioning System

Automatic Air Conditioning



1 Driver side temperature adjustment area

2 Fan speed adjustment area

3 A/C button

4 Power button

5 SYNC button

6 Front windshield defogging and defrosting button

7 Face mode button

8 Foot mode button

9 Defrosting mode button

10 Outside/recirculated air mode button

11 Air purification button

12 AUTO button

13 Front passenger side temperature adjustment area

14 Rear defrosting/ outside rear view mirror defrosting button

OMT1E-2452

3. INTERIOR FUNCTION

Note: Function buttons are different depending on the vehicle configuration. Please refer to the actual vehicle configuration.

READ

- Slide up the screen from the bottom of head unit screen, operate the air conditioning operating button on bottom status bar or operate the air conditioning panel button to display the air conditioning system operation screen.
- Do not leave the air conditioning system on longer than necessary when the engine is off to prevent battery discharge.

Fan speed adjustment

The airflow volume can be adjusted by operating the fan speed adjustment buttons.

Outside/recirculated air mode button

The outside/recirculated air mode can be switched by operating the outside/recirculated air mode button.

Press outside/recirculated air mode button. If indicator comes on, it indicates that it is in recirculated air mode; if indicator goes off, it indicates that it is in outside air mode.

Use the recirculated air mode under following conditions:

- In dusty environment.
- Keep out smells from exterior.
- prevent outside exhaust gas from entering vehicle.
- To quickly cool or heat the air in the vehicle.

A/C button

The air conditioning cooling can be achieved by operating the A/C button.

The A/C button indicator comes on, indicating that the air conditioning compressor is turned on. The indicator goes off, indicating that air conditioning compressor is turned off.

Power button

The air conditioning system can be turned on/off by operating power button.

Front windshield defogging and defrosting

The front windshield defogging and defrosting function can be achieved by operating front windshield defogging and defrosting button.

Front windshield defogging and defrosting button indicator comes on, indicating that the front windshield defog and defrost function starts to operate. The indicator goes off, indicating that the front windshield defogging and defrosting function stops operating.

Front windshield defogging and defrosting: Most of the airflow blows to front windshield, a small amount of airflow blows to side windshield.

When the air volume is not OFF, touching front windshield defogging and defrosting button will start the outside air mode and air conditioning compressor forcibly.

For the best defogging and defrosting effect, please operate as follows:

Step 1: Before driving, make sure that the inner surface of glass is clean and dry, if there is obvious dust or water drop, it is necessary to wipe off;

Step 2: Air volume adjustment: Max level;

Step 3: Temperature adjustment: Adjust comfortable temperature;

Step 4: Outside/recirculated air mode switching: Select outside air mode;

Step 5: Mode adjustment: Touch defrost button or adjust foot/defrosting mode;

Step 6: Turn on the refrigeration system: A/C indicator comes on.

READ

- When defogging in humid climate (such as rain and snow): Please keep A/C on. If A/C is off, it will affect defogging effect.
- When defogging in humid climate (such as rain and snow): Please keep outside air mode. If select recirculated air mode, it will affect defogging effect.
- When defogging in winter: Please keep outside air mode, adjust the direction of partial heat, the air outlets on both sides of the instrument panel face the windows on both sides, and when outside temperature is above 0°C, A/C auxiliary defogging is needed.
- If the A/C does not cool, it will affect the defogging effect, please contact authorized service station for inspection and repair as soon as possible.
- After wiping off all frost or fog, to improve comfort in vehicle, adjust mode and air volume to correct position.

CAUTION

- For driving safety, please use the defogging function correctly.
- Please do not use recirculated air mode for a long time in winter, otherwise the front windshield will be fogged quickly.
- Poor visibility will increase the risk of traffic accidents and personal injury. Therefore, it is very important for traffic safety to ensure a good visibility during driving.

Rear defrosting/outside rear view mirror defrosting

After turning vehicle power to ON mode, press the rear defrosting button, the indicator comes on, indicating that the rear defrosting/outside rear view mirror defrosting function starts to work. The indicator goes off, indicating that the rear defrosting/ outside rear view mirror defrosting function stops working.

3. INTERIOR FUNCTION

The function will automatically shut off after the defrosters have operated about 20 minutes.

CAUTION

- Please refer to your own particular vehicle for the heating function and rear defrosting function (if equipped) of outside rear view mirror.
- Make sure that the rear defroster is turned off when the fog and frost on window surfaces are cleared.
- Do not scratch or damage the heater wires when cleaning the rear windshield or outside rear view mirror.
- When the battery is low, the rear defroster cannot be turned on to allow the vehicle to start normally.

WARNING

To prevent burning yourself, do not touch the rear windshield or outside rear view mirror when the defroster is operating or has just turned off.

AUTO button

AUTO mode can be turned on by operating AUTO button.

In AUTO mode, with operating A/C switch, blowing mode, adjusting air volume or temperature LOW/HI, the corresponding function exits from AUTO mode.

In AUTO mode, outside/recirculated air mode switches and the circulation function exits the automatic control, and other functions are still in the AUTO mode.

In AUTO mode, operating the AUTO button will not exit from AUTO mode.

SYNC button

The mode switches between dual mode and single mode each time SYNC button is pressed.

Single mode: SYNC indicator comes on, indicating that the air conditioning is in single control mode. Driver side and front passenger side temperature cannot be adjusted separately.

Dual mode: SYNC indicator goes off, indicating that the air conditioning is in dual control mode. Driver side and front passenger side temperature can be adjusted separately.

Front windshield heating (if equipped)

After turning vehicle power to ON mode, press front windshield heating button on the air conditioning control panel, turn on the function. Press the button again, turn off the function.

It is turned off automatically after the function works approximately 20 minutes.

 CAUTION

- Do not scratch or damage the heater wires when cleaning the front windshield.
- Make sure that the heating function is turned off when the fog and frost on front windshield surface are cleared.
- When the battery is low, the front windshield heating function cannot be turned on to ensure that vehicle starts normally.

 WARNING

To prevent burning yourself, do not touch the front windshield when the front windshield heating function is operating or has just turned off.

Air purification button (if equipped)

Press air purification button to realize on/off of air purification.

PM2.5 values of inside/outside are displayed on the head unit.

Note: After the air purification function is turned on, the air volume is adjusted to OFF, the temperature is adjusted to LOW/HI, the outside/recirculated air mode is switched on, the front windshield defogging and defrosting function is turned on, and then the air purification function is turned off.


 READ


- The air purification function effect in winter is not obvious due to low ambient temperature in winter.
- When the air purification function is turned on, the outside/recirculated air mode is switched on, the air volume and mode may change.
- Turn on air purification function to ensure that the vehicle is not fogged, the response method of automatic A/C in summer, winter, spring and autumn is not exactly the same, but purification effect can be achieved.
- Air purification function is inoperative and the button is deactivated in following conditions:
 - Air purification function cannot be turned on when temperature conditions are not met.
 - Air purification function cannot be turned on when front windshield defogging and defrosting is turned on;
 - When the wiper is turned on (in high speed or low speed), one-button purification function cannot be turned on after a few seconds;


3. INTERIOR FUNCTION

Mode Adjustment

The mode adjustment can be achieved by operating the mode adjustment button (defrosting mode, face mode and foot mode can be combined) on air conditioning control panel or the soft button on display screen.

" " Defrosting mode: Airflow is blown out from defroster outlet.

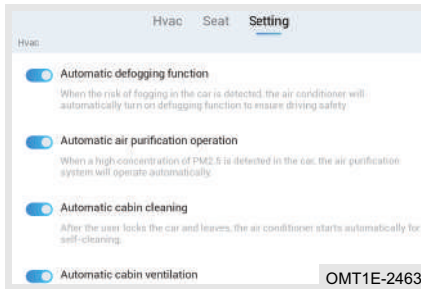
" " Face mode: Airflow is blown out from center and face outlets on both sides.

" " Foot mode: Airflow is blown out from foot outlet.

READ

- Face mode and defrosting mode cannot be combined.
- If windshield windows become fogged-up during driving, defrosting mode is recommended. For details, refer to Front Windshield Defog and Defrost in this section.

A/C Setting



When vehicle power is switched to ON mode, the following functions can be set on the A/C setting screen.

[Automatic defogging function]: When the risk of fogging is detected, the air conditioner will automatically turn on defogging function to ensure driving safety.

[Automatic air purification operation]: When a high concentration of PM2.5 is detected in the car, the air purification system will operate automatically.

[Automatic cabin cleaning]: After the user locks the car and leaves, the air conditioner starts automatically for self-cleaning.

[Automatic cabin ventilation]: Before the user unlocks the car, the air in the car will be changed automatically.

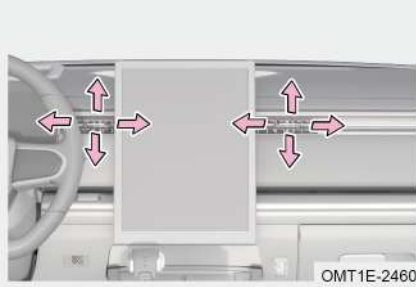
[Custom air conditioner]: Set the working state of automatic air conditioner to Eco, Comfort or Strong.

READ

The settings are different depending on the vehicle. Please refer to the actual vehicle.

Air Outlets Airflow Control

Center outlets



Move center outlet adjustment lever up, down, left or right by hand to adjust direction of airflow.

Side outlets



Move left/right side outlet adjustment lever up, down, left or right by hand to adjust direction of airflow.

Rear outlet



Move rear outlet adjustment lever up, down, left or right by hand to adjust direction of airflow.

Automatic Cabin Ventilation and Automatic Cabin Cleaning (If Equipped)

Automatic Cabin Ventilation

In hot weather, when the vehicle is parked outside, the temperature in the vehicle will be high. The interior active ventilation function can be set through the audio setting to cool the temperature in advance and remove the odor coming from the interior trim.

When the outside temperature is higher than 20°C and the system detects that the battery voltage meets the requirements, the vehicle will deactivate locking and the blower will start working in advance (30 seconds).

3. INTERIOR FUNCTION

When the working time of the blower exceeds 30 seconds, any door is opened or the vehicle is locked, the blower will stop working.

READ

The blower can operate up to two times before starting vehicle.

Automatic Cabin Cleaning

The automatic cabin cleaning function can be set through the audio setting used to dry the air conditioning pipeline to keep air conditioning system relatively dry and avoid the accumulation of a large number of bacteria and other dirt.

If the A/C was turned on during the last journey and the battery has enough power, the blower will work for 1 minute and then stop after the vehicle is locked for 5 minutes or more.

READ

Automatic cabin ventilation and automatic cabin cleaning are set in audio system. For details, refer to "Audio System".

Air Quality Control System (If Equipped)

When the outside air quality level is detected to decline in AUTO mode, the recirculated air mode will be turned on automatically. When the air quality returns to a proper level, the recirculated air mode will be turned off automatically. This function cannot be used to detect unpleasant gas. When the ambient temperature is $\leq 2^{\circ}\text{C}$, air quality control system does not respond, to prevent windshield and window from fogging up.

Air Conditioning Cooling Operation

■ When the engine is working:

1. Click AUTO button, the air conditioning system will automatically control compressor switch, compressor displacement, outlet temperature, outlet mode and airflow volume according to the user setting temperature and current ambient condition to meet the user's requirement of temperature control.
2. Choosing recirculated air mode can speed up cooling, which is helpful to improve fuel economy and driving comfort.

■ For the best cooling effect, please operate as follows:

1. Please keep the surface of the air conditioning filter clean without any obvious blockage;
2. Click AUTO button, then set driver/front passenger seat temperature to LO. The airflow volume, outside/recirculated air mode, blowing mode, air

conditioning compressor will be set to required maximum cooling status automatically.

READ

- Surface dirt and block in A/C condenser surface may cause poor cooling effect, please keep condenser clean.
- When air is cooled down quickly in humid and warm conditions, fog may be seen coming from the outlet, this is normal.
- When the temperature is low, such as in winter, even if indicator comes on after operating A/C button, A/C compressor still cannot be started.
- Water dripping from the A/C drain pipe and forming a pool after use of A/C colling system is normal.
- Refrigerant filled in A/C system will decrease as time, if you feel cooling effect of A/C is poor, please go to authorized service station for inspection and repair in time.
- It is recommended to turn on A/C refrigeration system not less than 5 minutes every month and open the window simultaneously, this will help to prevent A/C system damage due to lack of lubricant, and also prevent evaporator odor due to moist and germs.
- If A/C is on and vehicle is continually climbing long slopes, or is in heavy slow moving traffic for a prolonged period, the engine may become overheated. Please observe the high coolant temperature warning light. If engine is overheating, it is advisable to turn off A/C.
- After temperature in vehicle is decreased to lower temperature, to reduce the influence to power system power and fuel consumption, compressor will turn off automatically, so if using A/C in spring and autumn seasons with low temperature, the compressor will be turned on or off automatically, this is normal.
- During sudden acceleration, overtaking and climbing, power system needs more power for compensation. At this time, if the A/C is operating, the compressor may be turned off automatically, if it does not turn off and you feel lack of power, it is recommended to turn off A/C.

3. INTERIOR FUNCTION

WARNING

- To extend service life of A/C system, do not use the A/C for a long time with low speed when using A/C refrigeration.
- It is forbidden to repair A/C system by yourself, since the high pressure refrigerant is harmful to human, it is necessary to go to authorized service station for inspection and repair.
- Please purchase special refrigerant and compressor lubricant at authorized service station, otherwise, A/C system damages sustained by this are not under warranty.
- In hot summer, the temperature in closed vehicle will quickly increase due to sunshine, this may cause personal or animal injury or death, especially for the infants, even in short time.

Air Conditioning Heating Operation

■ When the engine is working:

1. Click AUTO button, the air conditioning system will automatically control outlet temperature, outlet mode and airflow volume according to the user setting temperature and current ambient condition to meet the user's requirement of temperature control.
2. Choosing recirculated air mode can speed up heating, which is helpful to improve fuel economy and driving comfort.

READ

- It is recommended to adjust to foot mode and turn off A/C.
- When air conditioning control operates automatically, priority is given to defogging and defrosting, so the auto mode is window and foot mode, resulting in excessive noise and insufficient temperature at feet area during actual usage. It's recommended to set to foot mode manually when there is no fogging on front windshield. If there are more people in vehicle and front windshield fogs up, air outlet mode can be switched to foot and window mode manually.

Auxiliary Fascia Armrest Box Cooling Function



Place necessary items (For example: Canned drinks) in the auxiliary fascia armrest box to perform A/C cooling operation. Rotate inner button of armrest box to cool the necessary items.

WARNING

Those items can not too big, otherwise, the auxiliary fascia armrest box can not be closed. Movement of driver's arm may be interfered if the auxiliary fascia armrest box is not closed. Be careful not to get hurt.

3-7. Fragrance System

Fragrance System (If Equipped)

The fragrance system improves smell in the vehicle and removes odors from other items or objects in the vehicle. It can refresh the interior air and create supreme pleasure for all the occupants. The fragrance also relieves people's nervous tension and makes them feel relaxing and enjoyment. Meanwhile, the refreshing fragrance allows driver to keep conscious and calm while driving, which reduces driving accidents.

The vehicle is equipped with three kinds of fragrance: Fresh and natural, healing and relaxing, sporty and passionate. User can choose fragrance according to his/her preferences and then sets different fragrance concentrations according to his/her need.

With vehicle in READY state, and press OFF button to switch ON/OFF the fragrance system; Press AUTO button, system turns on fragrance system automatically.

Replacing fragrance

1. Open fragrance box.
2. Remove the fragrance box cover and replace the fragrance.
3. Align the slot with the limit boss, press the fragrance box cover after clamping.

3. INTERIOR FUNCTION

READ

- User can set the fragrance welcome function and refreshing function in head unit. For details, refer to "A/C Setting".
- Care should be taken when removing/installing the fragrance box to avoid damage. It is recommended to go to authorized service station to be operated by after-sales personnel.
- Fragrance can be purchased from authorized service station.

3-8. Wireless Charging

Wireless Charging (If Equipped)

Introduction

Wireless charging uses electromagnetic induction technology, conveniently and safely to allow for a better better experience while driving.

Usage method



While vehicle power is switched to ON mode, the wireless charging starts to work after putting the mobile phone in wireless charging sensing area, and the audio head unit displays "🔋". The audio head unit displays "🔋" after charging is completely.

- In the following conditions, the wireless charging may not work properly:
 - The mobile phone cannot be charged if the back of the phone is more than 8 mm away from wireless charging sensing area.
 - The mobile phone cannot be charged if the back of the phone has thick metal (such as coin, metal mobile phone shell), and audio head unit displays "🔋!".
 - When the surface temperature of wireless charging sensing area is higher than 65° C due to sun exposure, the wireless charging module will trigger self-protection and the mobile phone cannot be charged.

 READ

- Wireless charging function is set in audio system (for details, refer to "- Audio System").
- Wireless charging function supports fast charging for some phones (50W).
- Please put the mobile phone in the center of the mobile phone slot. If you accelerate, decelerate or turn sharply during driving, the mobile phone will shake, which may affect the charging efficiency and stability.

 CAUTION

- In order to ensure the connection between vehicle and smart key, there will be a temporary charging shield.
- If your mobile phone does not support the wireless charging function, it is recommended that do not use the wireless charging patch. The quality of the wireless charging patch in the market is uneven, and frequent use is easy to damage (such as function failure, interface poor contact, metal foreign object recognition failure, etc.).

Phone forgetting reminder function (if equipped)

While vehicle power is switched to OFF mode, open driver door and if your mobile phone is left in wireless charging sensing area, it will sound an alarm for 20 seconds or take the phone out within 20 seconds, then the alarm will stop.

Note: Phone forgetting reminder function is set in audio system after wireless charging function is turned on.

3-9. Assist Grips and Coat hooks

Assist Grips



Assist grips are installed above front passenger door and both rear passenger doors respectively.

3. INTERIOR FUNCTION

CAUTION

- Do not use the assist grip when getting in or out of the vehicle or rising from your seat.
- To prevent damage to the assist grip, do not put a heavy load on the assist grip.

Coat hooks



Coat hooks are located on upper part of B-pillar trim plate.

CAUTION

Do not hang coat hangers or other hard or sharp objects on the hooks. If the curtain side airbags deploy, these items may become projectiles, causing death or serious injury.

3-10. Hooks

Hooks

Instrument panel hook



Instrument panel hook is at left of glove box.

Luggage hooks



Luggage hook is at left and right sides of luggage.

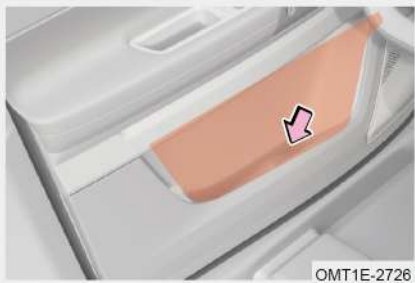
WARNING

Do not hang heavy items (no more than 3 kg) on the hooks, avoid damage to the hooks.

3-11. Storage Space

Storage Space

Door storage boxes



Door storage boxes on front and rear doors can be used for storing maps, cups and other items.

Glove box



Glove box is used to store map, instructions and other items.

3. INTERIOR FUNCTION

WARNING

Before driving, make sure that the glove box is closed in place. Otherwise in case of emergency braking or emergency steering, it may cause accidents and serious injury or even death.

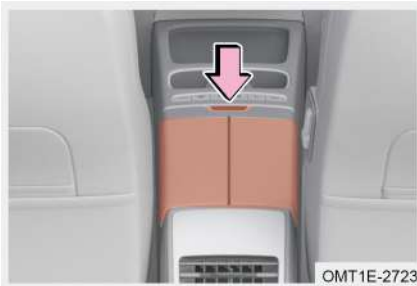
Seat storage bags



Front seatbacks are both equipped with storage bags on backside, which are used to store documents, instruction etc.

Auxiliary fascia console storage box

Auxiliary fascia console storage box is used to store map, instructions and other items.



Lift the lid to open the auxiliary fascia console storage box.

WARNING

- Adults or children are not allowed to sit on the auxiliary fascia console storage box.
- Auxiliary fascia console storage box must be closed when the vehicle is running, or it may hinder the driver's arm movement and cause injury.

Luggage compartment



The split folding rear seats provide convenience for storage of cargo (for details, refer to "Seats").

- When stowing luggage in the vehicle, observe the following precautions:
 - Be careful to keep the vehicle balanced.
 - For better fuel economy, do not stow unneeded items.
 - Make sure that the stowing items are not oversize to prevent the back door from closing properly.

WARNING

- Do not drive with the back door open or not closed, to prevent items from being thrown out to cause personal injury.
- Do not allow anyone to sit in the luggage compartment. The passengers should sit in their seats with their seat belts properly fastened. Otherwise, they may be seriously injured in event of sudden braking or a collision.
- Do not stack goods or luggage higher than seatback. Keep them low, as close to the floor as possible to prevent them sliding forward in event of braking, causing personal injury.

- Luggage compartment storage box (if equipped)



There are storage boxes on the left and right sides of luggage compartment.

The maximum weight of storage box is 10 kg.

3. INTERIOR FUNCTION

■ Luggage curtain (if equipped)



Pull the luggage curtain to the slots of point A and point B to secure it, and confirm if it is secured properly.

Carrier



Roof carrier is used to load cargo which can bear 75 kg goods. Overweight will cause carrier, body roof and other components to be damaged, the various problems caused by overweight are not within the claims.

⚠ CAUTION

- Do not overload the roof carrier.
- Do not exceed total length or total width of the vehicle when roof carrier is used for loading cargo.
- Before driving, make sure that cargos are securely fastened on the roof carrier.
- Be careful not to scratch the roof surface, place a blanket or other protector between cargo and roof if necessary.

⚠ WARNING

- Apply loads evenly. Improper loading may cause deterioration of steering or braking control, which may cause serious injury or even death.
- Loading cargo on roof carrier will make the center of the vehicle gravity higher. Avoid high speeds, sudden starts, sharp turns, sudden braking or abrupt maneuvers, otherwise it may result in loss of control or vehicle rollover due to failure to operate vehicle correctly.

3-12. Power Outlet

Power Outlet

Front power outlet



Front power outlet is located on the lower front part of auxiliary fascia console.

Power outlet can be used only when vehicle power is switched to ACC/ON mode.

Rear power outlet



Rear power outlet is located on the left of luggage compartment.

Power outlet can be used only when vehicle power is switched to ACC/ON mode.

 CAUTION

- To prevent the fuse from being blown, do not use electrical equipment with high power (120 W or more).
- To prevent the battery from depleting, do not use the power outlet longer than necessary when the engine is not running.
- Do not insert anything or allow any liquid to get into the outlet other than an appropriate plug, as this may cause electrical failure or short circuits.


3. INTERIOR FUNCTION


USB Port

Front USB port



USB port is located on the lower front part of auxiliary fascia console.

USB port "  ": It is the Type-C interface.

USB port "  ": It can be used for reading U disc, phone-link and charging the electrical equipment with low power, such as phone etc.

Rear USB port



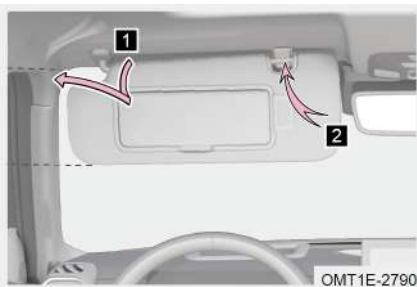
Rear USB port can be used for charging the electrical equipment with low power, such as phone etc.

USB port is located under the rear air outlet of center armrest.

3-13. Sun Visors , Vanity Mirrors and Ticket Clips

Sun Visors, Vanity Mirrors and TicketClips

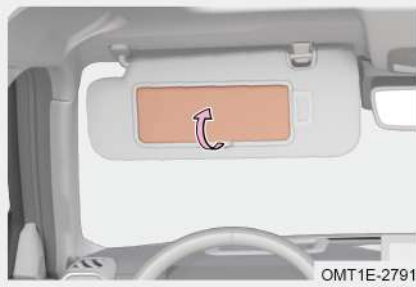
Sun Visors



Horizontally move the vanity mirror sliding plate to use the vanity mirror.

- 1** Flip the sun visor down.
- 2** Detach the hook and turn it outward to shade sidelight.

Vanity Mirrors



Turn up the vanity mirror cover plate.

For vehicle equipped with vanity mirror light, the corresponding vanity mirror light will come on when opening the vanity mirror.

Ticket Clips



Ticket clips are provided with the sun visors.

Fold down the sun visor for use.

3-14. Hood

Opening/closing the hood



Step 1: Pull hood release lever, and the hood will pop up slightly; Pull it again, and the hood pops up slightly again.

Step 2: Lift the hood up and lift and support the hood under action of the air spring.

Step 3: Lower the hood and close it until the latch is locked;

Step 4: After closing the hood, lift it slightly to confirm it is closed properly.

3. INTERIOR FUNCTION

CAUTION

- Before closing the hood, check if you have not left any tools, rags etc. in the engine compartment.
- When closing the hood, do not press it by hand, otherwise it may be deformed.
- Make sure that hood is closed before driving, otherwise accidents and personal injury may occur.

3-15. Back Door

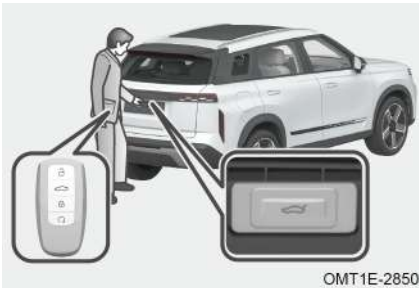
Power Back Door

For your convenience, power back door can be opened/closed in a variety of ways.

Smart key remote control

While vehicle power is switched to OFF mode, long press back door opener button on smart key, power back door will be opened/closed.

Back door exterior switch



Method 1: With central control lock unlocked, approach the back of vehicle and press exterior switch, on the back door, turn signal lights will come on and power back door will be opened/closed.

Method 2: With central lock locked, approach the back of vehicle while carrying smart key and press exterior switch on the back door, turn signal lights will come on and power back door will be opened/closed.

READ

When vehicle power supply is switched to ACC/ON mode and the center control lock is locked, unlock the center control first, and then open it through the external switch.

Back door interior switch



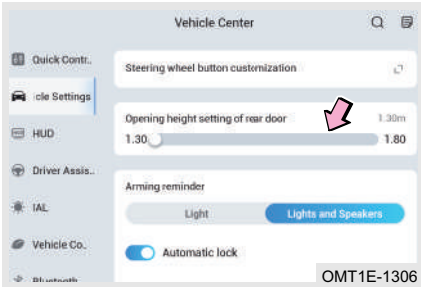
When the power back door opens, press "🚪" switch to close it

When the power back door is moving, press "🚪" switch to suspend the action.

Back door opening height



Method 1: When the power back door is open, adjust it to your desire height; long press "🚪" switch until the vehicle gives a light prompt, and the power back door opening height is set successfully.



Method 2: With vehicle in READY state, set the opening height by Audio System - Vehicle Center - Vehicle Settings.

READ

If the back door opening is too low, the back door opening height cannot be set.

3. INTERIOR FUNCTION

Back door jam protection function

If the back door encounters resistance (such as children, luggage, etc.), back door operates in the opposite direction until it is fully opened/closed, which is effective in preventing child injury and vehicle damage.

Smart key sensing (if equipped)



While vehicle power is switched to OFF mode or vehicle is started remotely, four doors are closed, approach to the back (red area) of vehicle when carrying smart key on your person and wait 3 seconds, after turn signal lights come on, take a step back (green area), power back door opens.

READ

- Smart key sensing back door opening needs to be set in audio system (for details, refer to "Audio System").
- Only sensing opening is available for power back door, sensing closing is not available; There is beep sound when opening and closing power back door.
- Please be careful to avoid touching power back door sensing opening function. After entering red area, leave within 2 seconds or leave green area immediately during turn signal light reminding, or press back door opener button on smart key otherwise, stop sensing back door opening function. For details, refer to "Smart Key".

 CAUTION

- If the back door fails to operate correctly, please go to a authorized service station for inspection and repair in time.
- When the back door opens, do not pull electric support rod laterally, which may cause damage to related parts.
- Before opening the back door, be sure to note that there should be nothing in the opening range, which could result in scratching the back door.
- When the back door is opened to the highest position, it cannot be pushed or supported by hand to higher place, as this may cause damage to related parts.
- Before driving, make sure that the back door is closed properly, otherwise it may cause accidents and damage to related parts.
- When closing back door by hand, operate gently, do not operate with brute force, which may damage motor and module.
- When closing the back door, make sure that nobody will be caught. If closing is interrupted, close it again.
- When washing car with car washing device or high pressure cleaner, please make sure that smart key is not within the detection area of power back door to prevent back door from opening unexpectedly.
- When going uphill or downhill, due to change in the center of gravity, the back door may not open or close. This is normal. Open or close it by hand.
- When ambient temperature is low, power back door support rod may not support back door automatically. In this case, lift back door manually to open it. If back door is frozen or covered by snow, do not open it forcibly. Turn on heater after engine starts, and do not open the back door until the temperature in vehicle rises. If it door must be opened in an emergency, wait until ice melts and freezing position is unfrozen to open it.

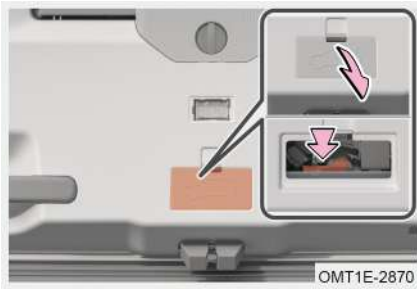
 WARNING

- Although the vehicle is equipped with jam protection function, do not activate jam protection function on purpose to avoid accidental injury.
- Before driving, the back door must be closed, otherwise it may cause accidents and damage to related parts.
- When opening the power back door, please be careful to avoid injury. Please make sure there is nobody within opening range of back door. Failure to do so may cause personal injury.

3. INTERIOR FUNCTION

Back Door Emergency Opening

Back door cannot be opened when battery is depleted or under similar conditions. In this case, the back door can be opened with emergency device switch.



Step 1: Stop the vehicle as safely as possible;

Step 2: Fold the rear seatback;


Step 3: Get in the rear of vehicle and open emergency device cover;

Step 4: Press the emergency switch and then push the back door to open it.

3-16. Fuel Tank Cap

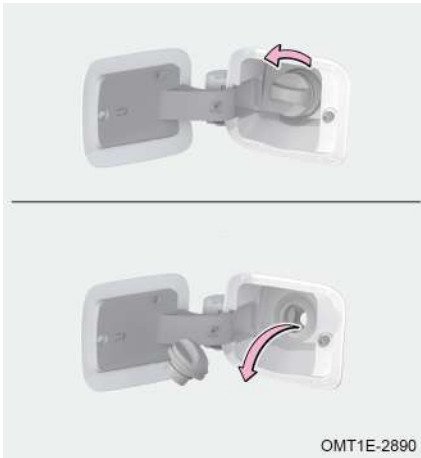
Fuel Tank Cap



Step 1: The vehicle is parked, long press "  " button and instrument cluster displays "It is ready to refuel, please refuel" message, and fuel tank cap unlocks after the pressure relief is completed;



Step 2: When the fuel cap is unlocked, the fuel tank cap will pop up outward while pressing it;



Step 3: Turn fuel filler cap counterclockwise to remove it;

Step 4: After refueling, turn fuel filler cap clockwise until a "click" sound is heard;

Step 5: Close fuel tank cap.

READ

Fuel may pollute environment. Therefore, any spilled fuel should be collected and disposed by a professional.

CAUTION

- A slight whooshing sound may be heard when the fuel tank cap is opened. This is normal.
- Never add diesel to fuel tank.
- If fuel overflows during refueling, wipe it off immediately to avoid damage to vehicle paint surface.
- After fuel filler cap is tightened firmly, loose your hand and the cap will turn slightly in the opposite direction. This is normal.
- To prevent damage to the cap, apply force only in the direction of rotation. Do not pull or pry it.
- During using, if fuel tank cap is not closed, drive vehicle to a safe area and stop it, then close the cap again!

3. INTERIOR FUNCTION

WARNING

- Before refueling, power off the vehicle and close all doors and windows.
- Make sure that the fuel filler cap is tightened securely to prevent fuel spillage, causing an accident.
- Because gasoline is extremely flammable, smoking is prohibited when refueling, and there must be no other sparks or open flames.
- Do not remove the fuel filler cap quickly when opening it. In hot weather, if cap is removed suddenly, high-pressed fuel vapor may be ejected from the filler neck and cause personal injury.
- Do not inhale vaporized fuel, as the fuel contains substances that are harmful for the health.
- After exiting the vehicle and before opening the fuel tank cap, touch an unpainted metal surface to discharge any static electricity. It is important to discharge static electricity before refueling because sparks resulting from static electricity can cause fuel vapors to ignite while refueling.
- Do not attempt to continue to refuel after the fuel gun is automatically turned off! Otherwise, the fuel tank may be too full, causing fuel to overflow the fuel tank, which can easily cause fire, explosion and serious injury.

4-1. Before Driving Vehicle	4-3. Steering System
Inspection and Preparation Before Driving..... 134	Electric Power Steering System (EPS) 140
Vehicle Power-on 134	4-4. Brake System
Vehicle Power-off 136	Electric Parking Brake System (EPB)..... 141
4-2. Transmission	AUTO HOLD 143
Automatic Transmission 137	Brake 145
Column Shift Switch 138	4-5. SRS Airbags
	SRS Airbags..... 146

4. DRIVING VEHICLE

4-1. Before Driving Vehicle

Inspection and Preparation Before Driving

Step 1: Check surroundings of vehicle before getting in;

Step 2: Adjust seat angle, head restraint height and steering wheel angle;

Step 3: Adjust angles of the inside and outside rear view mirrors;

Step 4: Fasten the seat belts;

Step 5: Confirm that the parking brake is applied and gear position is in P;

Step 6: With vehicle powered on, check if malfunction indicator and other indicators on meter are normal; if they are abnormal, please contact authorized service station for inspection and repair immediately;

Step 7: Carry smart key on your person or put it in vehicle, so that it can be detected normally; Depress brake pedal to start vehicle, and “READY” green indicator on instrument cluster remains on.

Vehicle Power-on

Normal power-on

The driver performs door unlocking operation, opens the driver door, and the vehicle is automatically powered on.

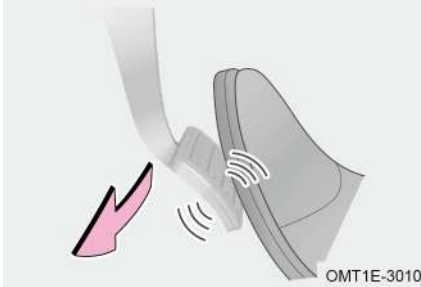
READ

The vehicle is equipped with an alcohol lock, which needs to be installed at after-sales authorized service station.

CAUTION

After vehicle is powered on, do not use electrical appliances of vehicle for a long period of time. When low battery is prompted, charge in time or use engine to charge by starting vehicle, otherwise the vehicle may not start due to power battery loss. When vehicle fails to start due to serious loss of power battery, it can be restarted by connecting the charging gun for charging. If it still cannot be started, please contact authorized service station.

Normal starting



With vehicle powered on, carry the smart key on your person and enter the vehicle, depress brake pedal to start vehicle, and "READY" green indicator on instrument cluster remains on.

READ

- When vehicle is in READY state, the motor is silent, make sure that the shift lever is shifted to P before leaving or locking vehicle.
- The vehicle is equipped with an alcohol lock, which needs to be installed at after-sales authorized service station.

Starting in emergency

When smart key battery is low or signal is seriously interfered, the vehicle cannot be started. Start according to following steps:



Lay smart key in auxiliary fascia console storage box with front side facing up (as shown in figure), depress brake pedal to start vehicle, and "READY" green indicator on instrument cluster remains on.

CAUTION

- Avoid engine idling for a long time as much as possible.
- Do not run cold engine at high speed or under high load (It is normal that the engine runs at high speed when the power battery of vehicle is depleted and vehicle is started in Sport mode).

4. DRIVING VEHICLE

Vehicle Power-off

Normal power-off



Method 1: With vehicle powered on, driver seat not occupied, four doors closed, and gear position in P, perform vehicle locking operation, and the vehicle is powered off.

Method 2: With vehicle in READY state, driver door open, driver seat not occupied, gear position in P, turn the vehicle to power-on state, close the four doors, and perform vehicle locking operation, the vehicle is powered off.



Method 3: With vehicle powered on or in READY state, gear position in P, click "OFF" button in control center, the vehicle is powered off. The next time the driver uses vehicle, it is not possible to automatically power on the vehicle, directly depress brake pedal to start vehicle, and "READY" green indicator on instrument cluster remains on.

Automatic power-off

With vehicle powered on, driver seat not occupied, four doors closed, and gear position in P, the vehicle is powered off automatically after parking for 90 minutes.

⚠ CAUTION

After the vehicle is stopped, the driver should always make the gear position in the P position through the P button before getting off, and then open the door and get off after determining the completion of the parking to prevent the vehicle from accidentally sliding.

⚠ WARNING

- Do not touch high temperature components (such as engine, exhaust pipe, radiator) immediately after engine has just stopped, otherwise, burns may occur.
- It is forbidden to park on dry leaves, hay or other flammable materials or allow the vehicle to idle for a long time. When engine is running or the vehicle is just stopped, high temperature of exhaust pipe may cause fire.

4-2. Transmission

Automatic Transmission

The automatic transmission belongs to the electronically controlled automatic transmission.




Step 1: Depress the brake pedal completely and shift the shift lever to D; Manually or automatically release the park brake and release the brake pedal to drive the vehicle slowly.

Step 2: Release the parking brake manually or automatically and release the brake pedal. then drive the vehicle slowly.

 **WARNING**

- Never tow the vehicle for a long distance or at high speed. Raise drive wheels or disconnect propeller shaft when towing.
- When shift lever is in N, make sure parking brake is applied or brake pedal is depressed, otherwise an accident may occur.

Fail-safe mode

When malfunction occurs in transmission system, fail-safe mode will be automatically activated, at the same time “” yellow indicator on instrument cluster remains on; transmission cannot operate normally, and vehicle will slow down and be driven at low speed.

 **CAUTION**

Long distance driving is not allowed in fail-safe mode. Otherwise, transmission will be damaged, please go to authorized service station for inspection and repair immediately.

4. DRIVING VEHICLE

Column Shift Switch



P gear: When the vehicle is stationary, depress the brake pedal and the shift lever is not in P. Press the button on the right side of column shift switch to shift the shift lever to P.

R gear: When the vehicle is stationary, depress brake pedal, move up to the top and shift the shift lever to R.

D gear: When the vehicle is stationary, depress brake pedal, move down to the bottom and shift the shift lever to D.

N gear: When the vehicle is stationary, depress brake pedal and shift the shift lever to N by following operations.

1. When the gear position is in D/P, push up column shift once to shift to N.
2. When the gear position is in R, push down column shift once to shift to N.

Gear position introduction

Gear Position	Function
P gear	Park gear, vehicle can be started
R gear	Reverse position. Back-up lights will come on and parking assist system will operate.
N gear	Neutral position. It is used for short time idling stop.
D gear	Forward driving position. Automatically shifts up and down among forward drive gears according to engine load and vehicle speed.

 CAUTION

- Do not coast vehicle in N. Otherwise, the transmission will be damaged.
- Never shift in P position when the vehicle is not stopped steadily. This may lead to abnormal sound or damage to the transmission.
- Do not shift the shift lever out of D while the vehicle is moving forward. Otherwise, the transmission may be damaged seriously.
- Do not shift the shift lever out of R while the vehicle is moving backward. Otherwise, the transmission may be damaged seriously.
- When shifting the shift lever out of P, it is necessary to depress the brake pedal first to stop the vehicle steadily, and then perform shifting among each gear position. Otherwise shifting mechanism will be damaged.
- When vehicle malfunctions occur due to insufficient battery (12 V) and even depressing the brake pedal or shifting out of P is impossible, please contact a authorized service station immediately for inspection and repair.
- When the vehicle is parked on a slope, the parking brake must be applied first, and then the shift lever is shifted into P. After starting the vehicle on a slope, first shift the shift lever out of P, then release parking brake for driving.

4. DRIVING VEHICLE



4-3. Steering System

Electric Power Steering System (EPS)


Introduction

Electric Power Steering System (EPS) uses the torque generated by motor as power source of steering system, instead of a hydraulic pump driven by the engine.

Electric Power Steering System (EPS) self-learning

If the vehicle battery is powered off and reconnecting or starting, due to the initialization of electric steering system angle, the yellow indicator "!" on instrument cluster flashes, turn the steering wheel left and right to the limit position to complete the angle reset, and the yellow indicator "!" on instrument cluster turns off.

Electric Power Steering System (EPS) indicator

When there is fault in electric power steering system (EPS), red indicator "!" on instrument cluster comes on.

READ

The steering force mode can be correlated with the driving mode. After disassociation, steering force can be set to COMFORT/SPORT separately. For details, refer to "Audio System".

CAUTION

- Frequent handling and rotation of steering wheel over long periods of time may damage the mechanism in the electric power steering system (EPS).
- It is forbidden to turn the steering wheel frequently and quickly at idle speed to prevent the system from overheating. If the system overheats, heavy steering will occur, which is normal. Stop rotating the steering wheel and switch the vehicle power to OFF/ACC mode until the system cools down.

WARNING

After electric power steering system (EPS) is disabled, although the vehicle still has the conventional steering capability, it should be driven with caution. At this time, please go to the authorized service station for inspection and repair as soon as possible.

4-4. Brake System

Electric Parking Brake System (EPB)

Introduction

Electric Parking Brake System (EPB) is a technology that integrates temporary braking during driving and long-time braking after stopping, and implements parking brake by electronic control. This technology replaces the traditional handbrake.

Usage methods



EPB operation conditions

Vehicle is in READY state, driver seat belt is fastened, driver door is closed, and brake pedal is depressed.

EPB ON

When EPB conditions are met, click "(P)" button in control center, and "(P)" red indicator on instrument cluster remains on, indicating that EPB function has been turned on.

EPB function is automatically applied when the vehicle is powered off or the shift lever is shifted to P.

EPB OFF

When EPB is turned on, click "(P)" button in control center, and "(P)" red indicator on instrument cluster goes off, indicating that EPB function has been turned off.

Releasing parking brake automatically

With vehicle stopped on level ground, driver seat belt fastened and driver door closed, when the shift lever is shifted from P to D or R, the EPB is released automatically, and "(P)" red indicator on instrument cluster goes off.

With vehicle stopped on a slope, driver seat belt fastened and driver door closed, when the shift lever is shifted from P to D or R, depress accelerator pedal deeply, and parking brake can be released automatically only when driving force is greater than slipping force.

 READ


When towing vehicle, it is necessary to release parking brake, and the shift lever needs to be shifted into N.

4. DRIVING VEHICLE


CAUTION

- EPB and AUTO HOLD cannot be used when vehicle battery (12 V) is depleted. Jumper cables can be used to start.
- While depressing brake pedal for releasing or applying parking brake, brake pedal may push slightly up or down, just depress the brake tightly.
- When performing automatic releasing of electric parking brake, fasten the driver's seat belt and close the driver door. Failure to do so may cause the automatic releasing conditions of parking brake cannot be satisfied.
- When enabling and releasing electric parking brake, “whooshing” sound may be heard from rear part of vehicle. This is the working sound emitted by parking brake and is normal.
- If vehicle coasts after stopping within a short period of time, system will increase parking brake force automatically to hold it for safety. When parking brake force is increasing, system makes operation sound. This is normal.

WARNING

To avoid accidental vehicle movement, when stopping or leaving the vehicle, after EPB system operates, the “

Emergency braking function

If foot brake fails, pull up the electric parking brake button continuously to forcibly apply brake by parking brake. In this process, “

WARNING

- Use this function cautiously during normal driving. When driving, passengers should not touch button accidentally. Otherwise, it may cause an accident.
- When emergency braking function is activated, it will drone. This is normal.
- When applying emergency braking, electric parking brake will apply brake at constant deceleration which is deviated from driver's desired deceleration and braking distance will be different.
- When foot brake fails or brake pedal is blocked, emergency braking function can be used in an emergency. ESP system and its components cannot exceed road traction physical limit, turning on emergency braking function when driving on curved road, dangerous road, heavy traffic road or in severe weather may lead in drifting, side-slipping or pulling over, be careful not to cause an accident.

4. DRIVING VEHICLE

READ

- The interior designs are different depending on the configuration of the vehicle. Please refer to the actual vehicle.
- According to the configuration of the vehicle, the auto hold indicator displays different. Please refer to the actual vehicle.

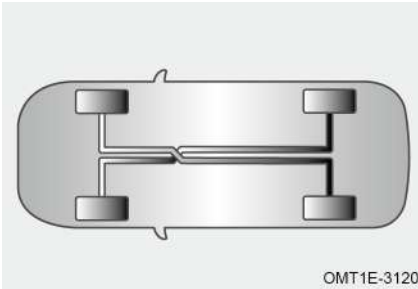
CAUTION

- When auto hold function is malfunctioning, yellow indicator in instrument cluster remains on, please drive slowly to authorized service station for inspection and repair as soon as possible.
- Turn on auto hold switch after vehicle starts, if driver door is not closed or driver side seat belt is not fastened, auto hold system cannot be entered.
- After auto hold function is turned on, auto hold system will automatically stop the vehicle after the vehicle comes to a complete stop from motion state by foot brake, but the shift position is still in D or R. It is recommended to shift to N for short parking and shift to P for long parking.
- When auto hold function is turned on, open driver side door or unfasten driver side seat belt to exit auto hold function, close the door or fasten the belt again to turn on the function again.
- When auto hold function is activated, unfasten driver side seat belt or open driver door to switch auto hold to electric parking.
- Turn off auto hold function before driving into car wash.
- Always park vehicle correctly according to safety regulations and take care to avoid hurt yourself and pedestrians.
- If accelerator pedal is depressed very slowly, auto release of auto hold delays. This is normal.

WARNING

To avoid vehicle accidentally moving, in the state of auto hold, confirm shift position before depressing accelerator pedal to start.

Brake




The brake system adopts X type arrangement, double circuit brake system; The system is a hydraulic system with two independent subsystems. If one of the subsystems fails, the other system can still perform brake function. However, the brake pedal should be depressed more firmly than usual and the braking distance will increase, and the brake system malfunction indicator remains on.

WARNING

Do not drive vehicle under conditions in which only one brake system works. Please go to authorized service station as soon as possible.

Brake system malfunction indicator

When there is fault in brake system, red indicator " " on instrument cluster remains on. When there is fault in brake system, check the brake fluid level, add brake fluid when it is lower than MIN line. If reason is unclear, go to authorized service station immediately.

Precautions for brake system

Be sure to read the following precautions when using the brake system:

1. If there is a continuous shaking or vibration to the steering wheel while braking, please go to authorized service station for inspection and repair immediately.
2. When driving downhill, shift to a low gear to make full use of engine braking effect and avoid continuous use of brakes. Failure to do so may the brakes to overheat, making braking distances longer and in serious cases may mean a temporary loss in brake effectiveness.
3. The brake system will make some noises sometimes during operation, which is normal, but if you hear metal friction or a whistling sounds over a period of time, the brake linings may be seriously worn, and you must go to a authorized service station for replacement immediately.
4. The new brake linings must be break-in to reach optimal brake effect. Braking effect in the first 200 km is not optimal. In this case, depress brake pedal more firmly to compensate braking effect.
5. A wet brake may cause abnormal vehicle deceleration or pull to one side when braking. Depress brake pedal slightly to test effectiveness of brake. After driving through deep water, keep a safe vehicle speed and depress brake pedal slightly until braking function is restored.

4. DRIVING VEHICLE

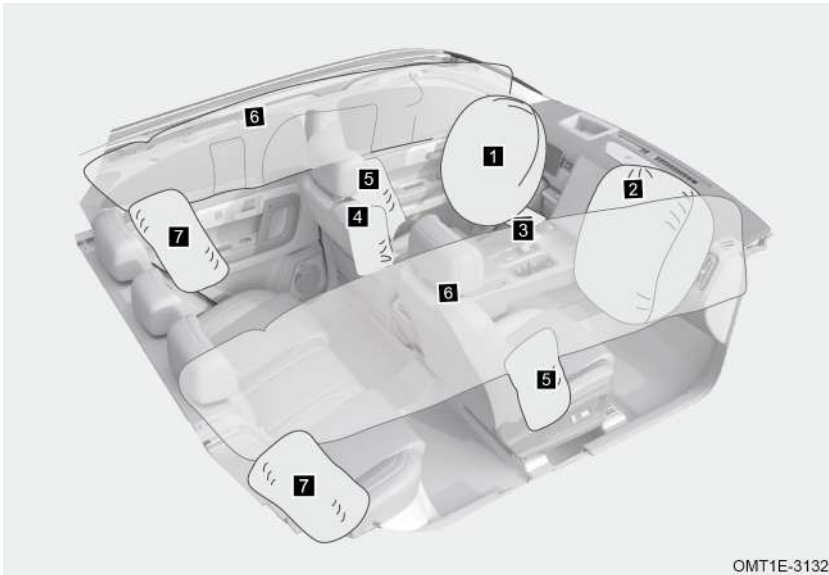
6. Wear condition of brake linings largely depends on its working conditions and driving style. For vehicles mainly used in city traffic, frequent starting and stopping will make working condition of brake linings worsen. Therefore, please go to authorized service station according to specified maintenance mileage to check thickness of brake linings or replace it as needed.

4-5. SRS Airbags

SRS Airbags

In severe frontal/side collision the SRS airbags deploy and work together with seat belts to protect occupants in vehicle. SRS airbags can distribute impact force more evenly to upper parts of occupants' body, so their body move slowly even stop, thus reducing the risk of passenger and driver injury. Once an SRS airbag is deployed, doors will automatically unlock, in d hazard lights will illuminate.

Location of SRS Airbags



OMT1E-3132

- | | |
|---|--|
| 1 Driver airbag | 2 Front passenger airbag |
| 3 Driver knee airbag (if equipped) | 4 Front middle airbag (if equipped) |
| 5 Front side airbag (if equipped) | 6 Curtain side airbag (if equipped) |
| 7 Rear side airbag (if equipped) | |

Using SRS airbags correctly

■ Driver airbag / front passenger airbag

In an event of a severe frontal collision and the airbag deployment conditions are met, both driver airbag and front passenger airbag work together with seat belts to help reduce injuries to the head or chest of driver and front passenger caused by hitting the interior component. (For models equipped with front passenger airbag switch, the front passenger airbag does not deploy when the switch is off).

■ Front side airbags (if equipped)

In an event of a severe side collision and the airbag deployment conditions are met, front side airbags can help protect the torso of the front seat occupants.

■ Driver knee airbag (if equipped)

If the airbag crash sensors receive a frontal impact of greater than moderate force, the knee airbag deploys immediately to reduce impact to the driver's legs.

■ Rear side airbags (if equipped)

In an event of a severe side collision and the airbag deployment conditions are met, rear side airbags can help protect the torso of the rear seat occupants.

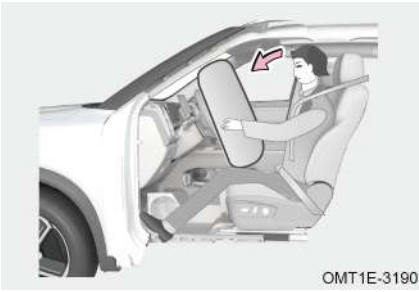
■ Curtain shield airbags (if equipped)

In an event of a severe side collision and the airbag deployment conditions are met, curtain shield airbags can help protect primarily the head of occupants in the outer seats.

■ Front middle airbag (if equipped)

In an event of a severe side collision and the airbag deployment conditions are met, curtain shield airbags can help protect primarily the head of driver and front passenger.

4. DRIVING VEHICLE



The SRS airbag works together with seat belt to protect safety of driver and passengers. However, airbag is not a substitute for seat belt. In addition, the SRS airbag will deploy only when the collision degree of vehicle reaches the design condition. In some collisions, seat belts are the only protective device. Wearing a seat belt during a collision can help reduce the risk of hitting objects inside the vehicle or being thrown out of the vehicle, and effectively protect the drivers and passengers. Therefore all people in vehicle should wear seat belts correctly. SRS airbags and seat belts can provide protection only for adults but are not designed to protect infants and young children.

The SRS airbag will generate considerable force at the moment of deployment. In order to avoid injury caused by deployment of the SRS airbag, the driver and occupants must adopt the correct sitting posture, correctly wear the seat belt and adjust their seat position, never get too close to the SRS airbag, such as sitting on the edge of the seat or tilting the body forward. For vehicles equipped with side airbags (if equipped) and curtain shield airbags (if equipped), make sure that the arms are sufficiently away from the vehicle side to avoid injury during deploying.

 CAUTION


- The SRS airbag cannot protect the lower part of the occupant's body.
- The SRS airbag will quickly contract after deploying, which can ensure that forward vision of driver is not blocked.
- The related parts of SRS airbag will generate heat after deploying. Do not touch the related parts of SRS airbag immediately to avoid injury.
- The SRS airbag is a non-reusable device. Once the SRS airbag is deployed, the related parts of SRS airbag must be replaced.
- If the areas where the SRS airbags are stored, such as the steering wheel and instrument panel are damaged or cracked, please go to authorized service station for replacement as soon as possible.
- The deployment and contraction of the SRS airbag is completed in a short period of time, and cannot protect against the impact of a second impact that may occur subsequently.
- The SRS airbag is neither designed for rear collisions, slight frontal collisions, nor for vehicle rolling over, and it does not work when the vehicle is braked in an emergency.
- The SRS airbags release some smoke and dust after deploying. For people with asthma or other respiratory problems, respiratory system could be stimulated. Therefore, all people in vehicle should get out as soon as possible, or open windows to breathe fresh air and seek medical treatment if necessary.

4. DRIVING VEHICLE

WARNING

- The seat cover should not block side airbags (if equipped) and front middle airbag (if equipped) during using, as in the event of an accident, the side airbags (if equipped) and front middle airbag (if equipped) will not pop up after inflating, which will reduce protection for passengers.
- A soft, dry cloth or cloth dampened with water must be used to clean the SRS airbag. In order to avoid any fluid into the SRS airbag, otherwise it may seriously affect the normal function of SRS airbag.
- If there is water in vehicle, the SRS airbag may be damaged. Even if there is no collision at this time, it may cause the airbag to deploy accidentally. Turn off the engine immediately and disconnect the negative battery cable. Do not try to start the engine. Please contact authorized service station for inspection and repair immediately.
- Make sure driver and front passenger always sit upright. Leaning into the path of front middle airbag can prevent the airbag from deploying properly and increases your risk of injury.
- Do not attach accessories on or near the front middle airbag. They can interfere with the proper operation of the airbag, or hurt someone if airbag inflates.
- Do not open the lid of front center armrest box while driving.
- Do not cover or replace the driver's seatback cover without consulting authorized service station. Improperly replacing or covering driver's seatback cover can prevent front middle airbag from properly deploying during a side impact.

SRS airbag indicators

The " " red indicator on instrument cluster remains on when it is malfunctioning, which is used to alert the driver that SRS airbag is malfunctioning. Please go to authorized service station for inspection and repair as soon as possible.

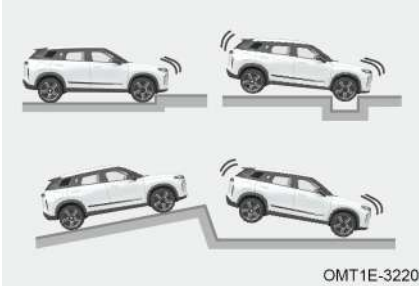
SRS airbag operating conditions

Deployment conditions of the SRS airbag do not depend on driving speed of vehicle, but depend on the object, collision direction and vehicle speed. SRS airbags may not deploy when the impact of collision is absorbed or dispersed into the body; However, the SRS airbag can sometimes operate depending on the impact condition in an accident. Therefore, deployment conditions of the SRS airbag should not be judged according to the damaged condition of the vehicle.

Even if the SRS airbag is not deployed, a collision may damage the SRS airbag in the vehicle. SRS airbags may not operate properly if damaged, and therefore will not be able to protect you and other passengers in the event of another collision, which may result in accidents and personal injuries. In order to ensure that the SRS airbag can deploy properly in an event of collision,

please go to authorized service station for inspection and repair as soon as possible.

■ Conditions under which SRS airbag may deploy other than a collision

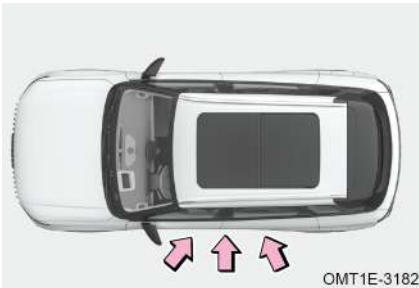


The driver airbag, front passenger airbag, front side airbags, curtain shield airbags and front middle airbag may also deploy if a serious impact occurs to the underside of your vehicle.

■ Conditions under which SRS airbag may deploy in a collision



In general, in an event of frontal collision, the driver airbag, front passenger airbag and driver knee airbag (if equipped) will deploy if the deceleration of vehicle exceeds the designed threshold level.



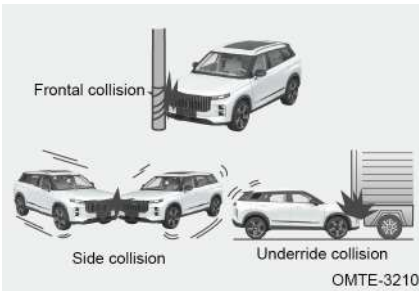
The vehicle is subjected to a strong side impact, and the side collision sensors detect an impact severe enough to cause the side airbags, curtain shield airbags, and front middle airbag to deploy.

4. DRIVING VEHICLE

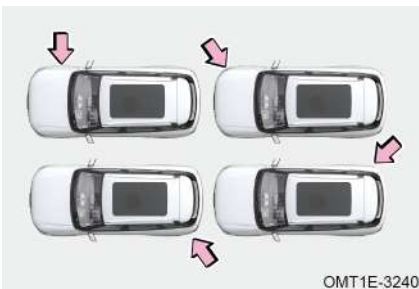
■ Conditions under which SRS airbag may not deploy during a collision



The driver airbag, front passenger airbag and driver knee airbag (if equipped) will usually not deploy if the vehicle is involved in a side or rear collision, if it rolls over, or if it is involved in a low-speed frontal collision.



The driver airbag, front passenger airbag and driver knee airbag (if equipped) may not deploy if the front of vehicle hits a telegraph pole, goes under a truck, or if the vehicle is involved in an sideways collision.



The side airbags, curtain shield airbags and front middle airbag may not deploy if the vehicle is subjected to a collision from side, the rear part of the rear tire or a side collision at certain angles to the vehicle.



The side airbags, curtain shield airbags and front middle airbag may not deploy if the vehicle is subjected to a front or rear collision, turnover or low speed side collision.

Precautions for SRS airbag



Always keep SRS airbag deployment path clear. It is forbidden to place anything (such as mobile phone) between the occupant and the SRS airbag and fix or place any objects on or near the SRS airbag cover; If there is an object between occupant and SRS airbag, the SRS airbag may not deploy according to design path, or the SRS airbag may push object to occupant's body, causing serious injury or even death.



Do not sit on the edge of the seat or lean against the dashboard.



Do not allow a child to stand in front of the front passenger airbag unit or sit on the knees of front passenger.



Do not lean against the door, A pillar, B pillar or C pillar.

Do not allow anyone to kneel on the passenger seat toward the door or put their heads or hands outside the vehicle.

4. DRIVING VEHICLE



Do not attach anything to or lean anything against the areas such as the instrument panel, steering wheel and lower portion of the instrument panel. These items can become projectiles when driver airbag or front passenger airbag deploys.



Do not attach anything to areas such as the door, windshield glass, side door glass, A pillar, B pillar, C pillar, roof side rail and assist grip.

Do not strike or apply excessive force to the area of SRS airbag components. Otherwise, it may cause SRS airbag malfunction.

Replacement of SRS airbag component

The related parts of the SRS airbag must be replaced 10 years from the date of vehicle purchase. In order to make sure that the SRS airbag can ensure your safety, please always go to authorized service station to replace related parts of the SRS airbag within the specified time.

Make sure that the new owner knows the SRS airbag configuration and the replacement date of SRS airbag in this vehicle when the vehicle is sold.

Modification and disposal of SRS airbag components

Do not dispose of the vehicle or operate the following components without permission of the authorized service station, otherwise accidents and personal injuries may occur:

- Modification of vehicle suspension system.
- Modification of vehicle front bumper, etc.
- Modification of side doors or door protective panel and B-pillar protective panel, etc.
- Installation, removal, disassembly and repair of airbags (SRS).
- Repair, modification, removal or replacement of steering wheel, instrument cluster, instrument panel and seats.

<p>5-1. Speed Limit Assist System (SLA) Speed Limit Assist System (SLA) (If Equipped) 158</p> <p>5-2. Cruise System Cruise Control System (If Equipped) 159 Adaptive Cruise Control System (ACC) (If Equipped) 160 Active Speed Limit (ASL) (If Equipped)..... 167 Intelligent Speed Control System (SCF) (If Equipped) 168 Intelligent Speed Control System (ISC) (If Equipped) 169</p> <p>5-3. Hill Descent Control System (HDC) Hill Descent Control System (HDC) (If Equipped) 170</p> <p>5-4. Lane Departure Warning System (LDW) Lane Departure Warning System (LDW) (If Equipped) 171</p> <p>5-5. Lane Departure Prevention System (LDP) Lane Departure Prevention System (LDP) (If Equipped)..... 173</p>	<p>5-6. Emergency Lane Keeping (ELK) System Emergency Lane Keeping (ELK) System (If Equipped) 175</p> <p>5-7. Blind Spot Detection (BSD) System Blind Spot Detection (BSD) System (If Equipped) 176 Rear Cross Traffic Alert (-RCTA) System (If Equipped) 178 Rear Cross Traffic Braking (RCTB) System (If Equipped)..... 178 Door Open Warning System (DOW) 179 Rear Collision Warning System (RCW)(If Equipped) 180</p> <p>5-8. Automatic Emergency Braking System (AEB) / Front Collision Warning System (FCW) Automatic Emergency Braking System (AEB) / Front Collision Warning System (FCW) (If Equipped) 181</p> <p>5-9. Traffic Jam Assist System (TJA) / Integrated Cruise Assist System (ICA) Traffic Jam Assist System (TJA) / Integrated Cruise Assist System (ICA) (If Equipped) 184</p>
--	---

<p>5-10. Intelligent Avoidance System Intelligent Avoidance System (If Equipped) 186</p> <p>5-11. Drive Away Information System Drive Away Information System (If Equipped) 187</p> <p>5-12. Tire Pressure Monitoring System (TPMS) Tire Pressure Monitoring System (TPMS) (If Equipped) 187</p> <p>5-13. Driver Monitoring System Driver Monitoring System (DMS) (If Equipped) 190</p> <p>5-14. Parking Assist System Panoramic View Monitor System (If Equipped) 191 Parking Radar System 195</p> <p>5-15. Multi-Collision Brake System (MCB) Multi-Collision Brake System (MCB) (If Equipped) 197</p> <p>5-16. Head Up Display (HUD) System Head Up Display (HUD) System (If Equipped) 198</p> <p>5-17. Driving Recorder (DVR) Driving Recorder (DVR) (If Equipped) 199</p>	<p>5-18. Braking Force Control System Electronic Stability Program System (ESP) 202 Anti-lock Brake System (ABS) 204 Extended Function 206</p> <p>5-19. Plug-in Hybrid Electric Vehicle System (PHEV) Power Battery 207 New Energy 210 Energy Flow 210 Energy Recovery Intensity 211 Operating Mode 212 Charging Device 217 Charging Method 220 AC charging socket electronic lock 224 Emergency Unlocking of Electronic Lock (Only for AC Charging) 225 Charging Precautions 225 Safety Warning for Charging 227 External Discharging Device 228 External Discharging Method 228 Discharging Precautions ... 231 Safety Warning for Discharging 232</p>
--	--

5-20. Data Privacy

Driver Drowsiness and
Attention Warning
(DDAW)..... 232

Advanced Driver Assistance
System (ADAS) 233
Emergency call (eCall)..... 233

5. DRIVING ASSIST

5-1. Speed Limit Assist System (SLA)

Speed Limit Assist System (SLA) (If Equipped)

SLA detects speed limit sign information on road in front, and combines the information with speed limit information of navigation system, and use the final speed limit information to remind the driver to pay attention to the various current road speed limit regulations in the form of image, sound, etc., to keep legal speed and observe local traffic laws.



After SLA detects speed limit sign information on road in front and combines the information with speed limit information of navigation system, "120" indicator in instrument cluster remains on, if the speed exceeds current speed limit, prompt sound or visual warning.

Function limit

■ SLA may not be able to recognize in following situations:

- Faded signs.
- Signs on winding roads.
- Rotated or damaged signs.
- High signs on highway.
- Signs that is covered fully or partly, or that the position can not be found easily.
- Signs covered by frost, snow, dust fully or partly.

READ

SLA can be set in audio system. For details, refer to "Audio System".

WARNING

- SLA based on camera function is affected by weather and light, so the function is not appropriate for all conditions.
- Speed limit assist system is only a driving assistance function and cannot completely replace driver's vision. Obstruced cameras or radar, incorrect or missing speed limit information on the map, difficult road conditions and bad weather may all prevent this feature from working properly. In any case, drivers should take the initiative to pay attention to their own speed and road speed limit, and control their driving speed.

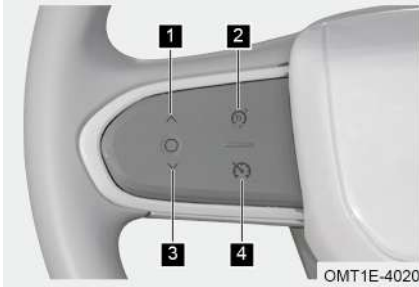
5-2. Cruise System

Cruise Control System (If Equipped)

Introduction

Cruise control system can maintain the speed set by driver.

Cruise control button





- 1** UP button: Resume cruise control system and adjust speed value.
- 2** Turn on / off active speed limit.
- 3** DOWN button: Set cruise control system, active speed limit and adjust speed value.
- 4** Turn on / off cruise control system.


 READ

UP button and DOWN button are shared button for cruise control system and active speed limit.



Usage method




■ Entering cruise control


Step 1: When vehicle is in READY state and press "  " button to enter pre-cruising state, and "  " indicator in instrument cluster remains on;

Step 2: In cruising process, if vehicle speed is within 40 - 150 km/h, press DOWN button again to set current speed as cruise speed and enter cruising state, and "  " indicator in instrument cluster remains on.

■ Exiting cruise control

Press "  " button to exit cruising state, and "  " indicator in instrument cluster goes off.

In cruising process, press "  " button to exit cruise function, and "  " indicator in instrument cluster goes off; Enter pre-speed limit state and "  " indicator in instrument cluster remains on.

Exit cruising state and enter pre-cruising state when brake pedal is depressed or sudden braking is applied during cruising process, "  " indicator in instrument cluster remains on.

■ Speed setting

Press UP button in cruising process, set vehicle speed will increase by 1 km/h; Long press UP button in cruising process, set vehicle speed will increase continuously.

5. DRIVING ASSIST

Press DOWN button in cruising process, set vehicle speed will decrease by 1 km/h. Long press DOWN in cruising process, set vehicle speed will decrease continuously.

Function limit

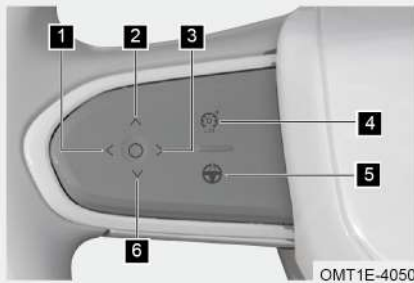
Under the following situations, do not use constant speed cruise system. Failure to do so may cause an accident, resulting in death or serious injury:

- During emergency towing.
- In heavy traffic.
- On winding roads.
- On roads with sharp curves.
- On slippery roads, such as roads covered with rain, ice or snow.
- Vehicle speed may exceed set speed when driving up and down a steep hill.

Adaptive Cruise Control System (ACC) (If Equipped)

ACC can maintain the speed set by driver and can also follow the vehicle at a set safe distance.

Adaptive Cruise Control System (ACC) button



- 1** Left button: Reduce the following distance.
- 2** UP button: Resume the ACC and adjust speed value.
- 3** Right button: Increase the following distance.
- 4** Turn active speed limit ON/OFF.
- 5** Short press to turn ACC ON/OFF; Long press to switch between ACC and TJA/ICA modes.
- 6** DOWN button: Enter the ACC, ASL and adjust speed value.

READ

- When there is a vehicle in front of your vehicle in the same lane, and driving speed is not higher than vehicle set speed, ACC will control the vehicle to follow vehicle ahead.
- When there is no vehicle in front in the same lane, or there is a vehicle in front in the same lane and driving speed is higher than set speed, your vehicle will drive at the set speed.

Adaptive cruise control system (ACC) activation conditions

The following conditions must be met at the same time, ACC can be activated:

- Vehicle speed is higher than 15 km/h, or system recognizes a target vehicle ahead.
- Brake pedal is not depressed (during driving).
- Driver door is closed.
- Driver seat belt is fastened.
- Transmission gear position is in D position.
- Parking brake is not applied.
- ESP is turned on.
- ESP is not activated.
- ABS is not activated.
- hood is not opened.
- ASL function turns off.

Usage method

■ Entering ACC

When vehicle is in READY state, the system enter pre-cruising state after activation conditions are met, and "ACC" indicator in instrument cluster remains on:

Method 1: During pre-cruising state, if vehicle speed is higher than 15 km/h, press DOWN button to set current speed as cruise speed and enter cruising state, and "ACC" indicator in instrument cluster remains on; if vehicle speed is less than 15 km/h, press DOWN button to set 15 km/h as cruise speed, and "ACC" indicator in instrument cluster remains on.

Method 2: In the current ignition cycle, after ACC exits, press the UP button to set the previous cruise speed as cruise speed and enter the cruising state, and "ACC" indicator in instrument cluster remains on.

5. DRIVING ASSIST

READ

- ACC will exit when the ASL function is turned on. Only after the driver actively turns off the ASL function, ACC can enter the pre-cruising state again when the activation conditions are met.
- When there is a vehicle in the front of your vehicle at the same road, and driving speed is no higher than vehicle set speed, ACC will control the vehicle to follow vehicle ahead.
- When there is no vehicle in the front of your vehicle at the same road, or there is a vehicle and driving speed is higher than set vehicle, the vehicle drives at the set speed.
- when applying parking brake and vehicle stands still and front target exists, press the DOWN button, instrument cluster will prompt "Please depress accelerator pedal to activate adaptive cruise control system (ACC)", driver depress accelerator pedal slightly to activate ACC according to the prompt.
- The system may not be available under special conditions (such as desert roads).

■ Exiting adaptive cruise control

When one or more of the following situations occur in cruising process, ACC will exit:

- Depress brake pedal.
- Driver door is opened.
- Driver seat belt is not fastened.
- Apply the parking brake.
- ESP operates.
- ABS operates.
- AEB operates.
- ESP is not turned on.
- Transmission gear position is in a position other than D.
- Driver depress accelerator pedal for more than 15 minutes.
- Press the exit button.
- Hood is opened.

After the above conditions that can exit function resume, press the UP button, enter cruising state and resume set state before exiting.

■ Speed setting

Press UP button in cruising process, set vehicle speed will increase by 1 km/h; Long press UP button in cruising process, set vehicle speed will increase by 5 km/h; when speed exceeds 80 km/h, set vehicle speed will increase by 10 km/h.

Press DOWN button in cruising process, set vehicle speed will decrease by 1 km/h; Long press DOWN button in cruising process, set vehicle speed will decrease by 5 km/h; when speed exceeds 80 km/h, set vehicle speed will decrease by 10 km/h.

READ

- For ACC, the lowest speed setting is 15 km/h and the highest speed setting is 160 km/h.
- Speed will be lower than set speed when driving uphill, speed will be higher than set speed slightly when driving downhill.

Following distance

Press the left button or right button in cruising process, adjust following distance which is divided into five levels.

READ

- Following distance changes based on speed and increases with speed improving.
- In minimum clearance mode, the distance between the vehicle and vehicle ahead will quite small during following at low speed. For safety, select maximum clearance mode to follow vehicle ahead on slippery road.
- During following vehicle ahead and decelerates, ESP continuously performs brake and motor will generate operation sound when rotating, this is normal and please drive at ease.

WARNING

- The driver must control vehicle, operate as needed in the whole driving process to avoid danger.
- Please note that any drive behavior must conform all traffic regulations.

Overtaking

Depress accelerator pedal to overtake set speed in cruising process. After accelerator pedal is released, the control state will return to previous state. During overtaking, if the vehicle is too close to vehicle ahead, instrument cluster will pop up "Please take over the vehicle by driver" accompanied with urgent warning sound to remind driver to avoid.

Curve speed control

Decrease the speed when vehicle enters curve in cruising process, which help driver to drive through curve safely.

5. DRIVING ASSIST

WARNING

- The driver must control vehicle, drive through curve as slowly as possible in the whole driving process.
- While entering a curve, due to limitation of detection target for sensors probe, vehicle ahead on the same driving route may not be detected in time, which requires the driver to be ready to take over the control of the vehicle at any time.

Stopping and starting function


During following vehicle ahead in ACC mode, vehicle ahead decreases to stop, the vehicle also decreases to stop, after stopping:

- If vehicle ahead starts within 5 seconds (10 seconds in highways base on navigation), the vehicle also starts automatically.
- If vehicle ahead stops for more than 5 seconds (10 seconds in highways base on navigation) and starts within 5 seconds (10 seconds in highways base on navigation) to 10 minutes, driver need to depress accelerator pedal slightly to drive off after vehicle ahead starts.
- When vehicle stops within 10 minutes, driver unfasten seat belt or open driver door, EPB is activated automatically and vehicle stands still.
- When vehicle stops for more than 10 minutes, the vehicle will exit ACC, and EPB will be activated automatically and vehicle stands still.

WARNING

During following vehicle ahead, always pay attention to whether the instrument cluster displays the vehicle target in front. If the instrument cluster does not display the target in front, it means that target in front of ACC has been lost, the vehicle will start to accelerate according to set speed.

Precautions for adaptive cruise control

- ACC can not violate laws of physics and has certain limitations. Driver must always keep control of the vehicle and be fully responsible for the vehicle.
- If the vehicle is extremely close to vehicle on adjacent lanes, ACC may select the vehicle as following target.
- ACC can not respond to stationary objects and vehicles, crosswise vehicles, oncoming vehicles, pedestrians, bicycles and animals.
- When stopping vehicle briefly in ACC mode, driver must confirm that there are no obstacles or other traffic participants such as pedestrians, bicycles and animals in front of the vehicle.
- When ACC function is malfunctioning, "!" yellow indicator in instrument cluster comes on. At this time, please go to authorized service station for inspection and repair as soon as possible.

- During ACC controls vehicle, never inadvertently step on accelerator pedal, otherwise, ACC will not apply brake to vehicle, driver should always be ready to brake actively to ensure the safety of the vehicle.
- ACC has a limited brake time reaction; if vehicle ahead occurs sudden brake, another driver cuts in front of the vehicle, the vehicle cuts behind a preceding vehicle, ACC may not respond or react to vehicle ahead too slow, in this case, driver should take over the vehicle control in time.
- Driver should adjust the following distance from vehicle ahead based on traffic flow and weather condition and is responsible for ensuring the vehicle can stop safely at any time. In inclement weather (rain, snow, fog, etc.), ACC may not recognize a vehicle ahead. In this case, ACC should be turned off.
- ACC is suitable for use on highways and roads in good condition, It is not recommend for use on urban roads, narrow roads, mountain roads, hills, tunnels, etc. If using ACC on curves, target vehicle ahead may be lost or target selection is delayed in ACC mode due to limitation of sensor detection range, in this case, ACC will control vehicle to accelerate to set speed.
- During the process of following the vehicle ahead to stop, ACC may not be able to recognize the end of the vehicle, but the lower or upper part of vehicle (such as rear axle of truck that has higher chassis, upper part of lower flatbed trailer). In these cases, system cannot ensure a proper stopping distance or even lead to collision. Therefore, driver must keep a watch on vehicle and be ready to take over vehicle control anytime during this process.
- Camera are installed behind windshield; Please note that view of sensor should not be covered by pollutants, and front or surrounding areas should not be modified. Especially, when sensor is completely covered by snow, system function will be exited. AEB performance may be reduced or it's function fails due to sensor vibration or collision. In this case, please go to authorized service station for recalibration for sensors as soon as possible.

Precautions mentioned above do not cover all circumstances that may affect system normal operation. System function may fail to bring the expected effect due to other reasons. Driver must always take full responsibility for vehicle control anytime.

Overtake Assist (OTA)

■ OTA Function Overview

When ACC function is active and the vehicle is following the preceding vehicle, and driver turns on the indicator, the overtake assist (OTA) function will be activated, the vehicle automatically accelerates to approach the preceding vehicle to assist the driver in changing lanes.

■ OTA function operating speed range: >70kph

■ Functional activation conditions:

- ACC active, and vehicle is following the preceding vehicle

5. DRIVING ASSIST

- Driver turns on the left or right indicator
- There is another lane in the direction of turning indicator
- The target lane is not blocked by other vehicles
- Current vehicle speed is lower than ACC set speed
- The lane line on the side of the target lane are not solid

■ Function exit conditions:

- While the indicator is on, and lane changing conditions not met for more than 6 seconds
- Ego vehicle completes lane change
- The distance to the preceding vehicle is too close
- The target lane is blocked by other vehicles
- After OTA activated, lane change is not completed within 15 seconds
- Driver turns on the indicator in the opposite direction
- Current vehicle speed is greater than or equal to ACC set speed

■ Other restrictions:

- During OTA activation, the vehicle speed cannot exceed the ACC set speed
- During the lane change process, the distance between to the target in front of the adjacent lane can not be too close
- Only after one side's OTA function exits for more than 2 seconds, the other side's OTA function can be activated

READ

The OTA function only provides additional longitudinal acceleration when the driver intends to change lanes, and does not replace or assist the driver in lateral control. The driver needs to independently operate the steering wheel to complete the lane change.



Active Speed Limit (ASL) (If Equipped)


Introduction


Driver drives vehicle at set limit speed.

Usage method



■ Entering active speed limit



Method 1: When vehicle is in READY state and press " " button to enter pre-speed limit state, and " " indicator in instrument cluster remains on;

Method 2: With engine not started or vehicle speed < 30 km/h, press the DOWN button to enter speed limit state, and " " indicator in instrument cluster remains on, default set vehicle speed is 30 km/h;

Method 3: In speed limit process, if vehicle speed is within 30 - 200 km/h, press the DOWN button to set current speed as limit speed to enter speed limit state, and " " indicator in instrument cluster remains on.

■ Exiting active speed limit

Press " " button to exit speed limit state, enter pre-cruising state, and " " indicator in instrument cluster remains on.


Press " " button to exit speed limit state, and " " indicator in instrument cluster goes off.


■ Speed setting


Press the UP button in speed limit process, increase vehicle speed.

Press the DOWN button in speed limit process, decrease vehicle speed.

Overtaking

In speed limit process, in order to overtake or in other operation condition, fully depress accelerator pedal to enter pre-speed limit state, and " " indicator in instrument cluster remains on.

After overtaking, if vehicle speed is more than previous set limit speed, it enters pre-speed limit state and " " indicator in instrument cluster remains on.

After overtaking, if vehicle speed is less than previous set limit speed, it enters speed limit state and " " indicator in instrument cluster remains on.

5. DRIVING ASSIST

Intelligent Speed Control System (SCF) (If Equipped)

When the vehicle is in cruising state (ACC or TJA/ICA), it can adjust vehicle speed by receiving speed limit sign information on road ahead detected by SLA system and combining the information with speed limit information of navigation system.

READ

If the driver does not confirm during the first pop-up window, another pop-up window will appear after 1 minute; thereafter, no more pop-up window will be shown until the new speed limit sign appears (the new speed limit sign is not the same as the previous one).

Activation conditions of intelligent speed control system

The following conditions must be met at the same time to activate intelligent speed control system:

1. SLA is turned on.
2. $30 \text{ km/h} \leq \text{Speed limit value of SLA system} \leq 120 \text{ km/h}$.
3. ACC system is activated.
4. $\text{Set speed of ACC system} > \text{Speed limit value of SLA system}$ or $\text{speed limit value of SLA system} - \text{cruising set speed of the vehicle} \geq 10 \text{ km/h}$.

Intelligent Speed Control System (ISC) (If Equipped)

When the vehicle is in cruising state (ACC or TJA/ICA), Speed Control Function (SCF) system detects the speed limit sign information on the road ahead and integrates the speed limit information of navigation system. When pressing the DOWN button during speed limit prompt pop-up, speed limit value of Speed Limit Assist System (SLA) is used as the cruise target speed, cruise control state for the vehicle can improve safety and reduce the risk of speeding/penalty points, and reduce the burden on the driver.

READ

- Intelligent speed control system can be set in audio system. For details, refer to "Audio System".
- If the driver does not confirm during the first and second pop-up window and never adjust setspeed, no more pop-up window will be shown until the new speed limit sign appears (the new speed limit sign is not the same as the previous one).

CAUTION

Intelligent speed control system is only an assist driving function and cannot completely replace the driver's visual and active braking. The normal operation of this function may be affected by factors such as blocked front camera or radar, incorrect or missing map speed limit information, complex road conditions and bad weather and other conditions. In any case, the driver should actively pay attention to and control the vehicle speed, rather than relying on the system control.

■ Activation conditions of intelligent speed control system

The following conditions must be met at the same time to activate intelligent speed control system:

- SLA is turned on.
- $30 \text{ km/h} \leq \text{Speed limit value of SLA} \leq 160 \text{ km/h}$.
- The speed limit value of SLA is 10 kph higher or lower than the cruising set speed of the vehicle.
- ACC is activated.

5. DRIVING ASSIST

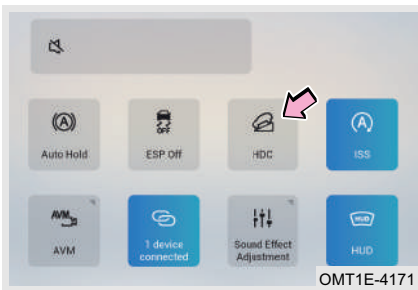
5-3. Hill Descent Control System (HDC)

Hill Descent Control System (HDC) (If Equipped)

Introduction

HDC can help vehicle drive on steep roads safely under controlled conditions. After HDC is turned on, when vehicle is driving down a steep slope, for vehicle with automatic transmission, speed control range is 10 to 35 km/h. When initial speed is lower than the minimum speed, vehicle will control at the minimum speed by default. The current control vehicle speed can be increased or decreased in a given speed range by depressing accelerator or brake pedal.

Usage method



With vehicle power in ON mode, slide down from the top right edge of the audio system screen to display the shortcut menu screen.

■ Turning on HDC

With vehicle power in ON mode and vehicle speed reaches 60 km/h or less, press HDC switch on the audio system to turn on HDC, and "🚗" green indicator in instrument cluster remains on.

■ Turning off HDC

- When HDC is on, press HDC switch, HDC turns off, "🚗" green indicator on instrument cluster turns off.
- When driving speed is higher than 60 km/h, HDC turns off.

Hill Descent Control (HDC) system indicator

When the system is activated, "🚗" green indicator remains on.

When there is a fault, "🚗" yellow indicator goes off.

CAUTION

- The speed range at which HDC is turned on is below 60 km/h.
- When HDC is working, the ABS will start automatically if there is a tire lock.
- Before entering steep road, set HDC so that driver can operate steering wheel without distraction.
- When HDC is working, if any wheel loses contact with ground, the braking force will be distributed to the wheel with higher adhesion coefficient.
- HDC actively applies braking force through the operation of electronic stability program system. There will be a hydraulic operation sound when the system is working, which is a normal phenomenon. When the electronic stability program system fails, the HDC cannot be turned on. Please go to authorized service station for inspection and repair as soon as possible.
- When HDC is working, the driver needs to be ready to take over the control of vehicle at any time for safety, because the system may be overheated or electronic stability program system may fail in addition to being turned off by the button during operation. At this time, the system will automatically exit the control, and the driver needs to substitute the HDC to control the vehicle speed in time.

5-4. Lane Departure Warning System (LDW)

Lane Departure Warning System (LDW) (If Equipped)

LDW detects lane line by front view multi-function camera. The system sends an alarm when wheel rolls over lane line and vehicle departs from its lane.

Introduction



When vehicle speed is no less than 65 km/h and lane line is recognized, LDW enters standby status.

When vehicle speed is no less than 65 km/h and the vehicle departs from one lane line, LDW is activated.

When vehicle speed decreases from 65 km/h to 60 km/h, LDW enters limit status.

READ

LDW ON / OFF and sensitivity adjustment can be set in audio system. For details, refer to "Audio System". System will memorize customer operation by default after LDW function is turned on / off by customer.

5. DRIVING ASSIST


CAUTION

- Lane line captured by camera: It can detect white solid line, white dotted line, yellow solid line, yellow dotted line and double solid line lanes.
- The system may not operate in cold and bad weather conditions, rain, snow, fog or strong contrast lighting can affect the sensor.
- The system will only work normally on the roads with two clear lane lines.
- The system may not operate when driving on cement road.
- The system may not operate when driving in road construction area.
- The system may not operate when driving on flooded or muddy roads.
- The system may not work when driving on sharp turns or narrow roads.
- When only single-sided lane line is detected by LDW, the system alarm stability decreases.
- If sensor is disturbed, the system may not work.
- Sensors may misidentify temporary construction markings on the road, etc. and give false alarm by mistake.
- If your vehicle suspension kit is not approved by us, LDW may not work properly.
- Keep front view multi-function camera free from obstructions, such as bird droppings, insects and ice.

WARNING

- Lane assist system just offers assistance to you. It may not work properly under all driving conditions, weather conditions, traffic conditions or road conditions.
- The driver must control vehicle, operate as needed in the whole driving process.

Lane departure warning system (LDW) indicator

When LDW enters pre-activating mode, " " gray indicator in instrument cluster remains on.

When LDW enters activating mode, " " green indicator in instrument cluster remains on.

When LDW operates, " " green indicator in instrument cluster blinks.

When LDW is malfunctioning, " " yellow indicator in instrument cluster remains on.

Function limit

LDW may not work properly in the following conditions:

- When changing lanes.
- When turning with high speed.

- When depressing accelerator pedal with excess force.
- When depressing brake pedal with excess force.
- When turning on hazard warning light.
- When turning on departure side turn signal light.
- When driving on roads with tight curves.
- When lane line is too thin, broken, blurred or departure side has no lane line.

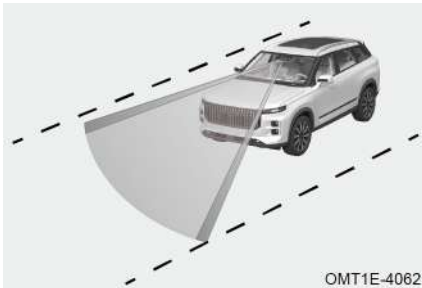
5-5. Lane Departure Prevention System (LDP)

Lane Departure Prevention System (LDP) (If Equipped)

Introduction

The system monitors the relative position of the vehicle and the lane sideline in real time, controls the lateral movement of the vehicle when the vehicle is about to deviate from the lane, and assists the driver to keep the vehicle in the original lane.

Activating LDP



When vehicle speed is no less than 65 km/h and lane line is recognized, LDP enters standby status.


When vehicle speed is no less than 65 km/h and the vehicle departs from one lane line, LDP is activated.


When vehicle speed decreases from 65 km/h to 60 km/h, LDP enters limit status.


READ

LDP ON / OFF can be set in audio system. For details, refer to "Audio System".

Lane departure prevention system (LDP) indicator

When the system is on or restrained, " " gray indicator in instrument cluster remains on.

When the system is pre-activated or activated, " " green indicator remains on.

When there is a fault, " " yellow indicator in instrument cluster remains on.

Function limit

- LDP may not work properly in the following conditions:
 - When changing lanes.
 - When turning on turn signal light.

5. DRIVING ASSIST

- When braking with excess force.
- When steering angle speed is too high.
- When depressing accelerator pedal with excess force.
- When turning on hazard light.
- LDP can recognize when the driver does not operate steering wheel for a while.
- Steering wheel is operated by driver when LDP applies corrective steering intervention.

■ Under the following situations, do not use LDP. Failure to do so may cause an accident, resulting in death or serious injury:

- If sensor is disturbed, the system may not function.
- The system can operate only when vehicle speed is more than 65 km/h or and lower than 160 km/h (130 km/h in some areas).
- Lane departure prevention system may not operate when driving in road construction area.
- Lane departure prevention system may not operate when driving on flooded or muddy roads.
- Lane departure prevention system may not operate when driving on sharp turns or narrow roads.
- Lane departure prevention system can only operate normally on the roads with two clear lane lines.
- If your vehicle suspension kit is not approved by us, the system may not work properly.
- Sensors may misidentify temporary construction markings on the road, etc. and give false alarm by mistake.
- The system may not operate in cold and bad weather conditions, rain, snow, fog or strong contrast lighting can affect the sensor.

CAUTION

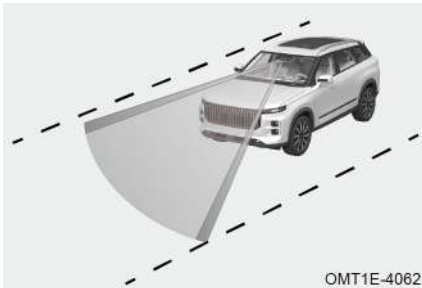
- Driver performs an active control when meeting a tighter curve.
- Driver performs an active control when meeting some conditions such as lane increase, lane merger, etc.
- Driver performs an active control when meeting complex traffic environment (such as intersection, heavy traffic road).

⚠ WARNING

- Lane assist system just offer assistance to driver. It may not work properly under all driving conditions, weather conditions, traffic conditions or road conditions.
- The driver must control vehicle, monitor management lane assist system and operate as needed in the whole driving process.
- During driving, it is strictly prohibited the driver to hand off steering wheel.

5-6. Emergency Lane Keeping (ELK) System**Emergency Lane Keeping (ELK) System (If Equipped)**

The driver assistance function Emergency Lane Keeping (ELK) include three sub functions, which are Road Edge Detection (ELK-re), Oncoming Detection (ELK-oc) and Overtaking Detection (ELK-ot). The Emergency Lane Keeping Road Edge (ELK-re) provides steering support for the driver to prevent hitting the edge of the road. The Emergency Lane Keeping Oncoming (ELK-oc) provides steering support for the driver to avoid the ego lane departure, which could lead to collision with on-coming traffic on neighbor lane. The Emergency Lane Keeping Overtaking (ELK-ot) provides steering support for the driver to avoid collision with overtaking traffic on neighbor lane, when driver has indicated or started to move in the neighbor lane.

Operating instructions

OMT1E-4082

When vehicle speed is no less than 50 km/h and lane line is recognized, ELK-ot enters standby status.

When vehicle speed is no less than 65 km/h and lane line is recognized, ELK-re/EL-oc enters standby status. When vehicle speed decreases from 50 km/h to 45 km/h, ELK-ot enters limit status.

When vehicle speed decreases from 65 km/h to 60 km/h, ELK-re/ELK-oc enters limit status.

📖 READ

Emergency Lane Keeping (ELK) ON / OFF can be set in audio system. For details, refer to "Audio System".

Function limit

■ Under the following situations, the system may not correctly identify traffic conditions:

5. DRIVING ASSIST

- The system can operate only when vehicle speed is higher than 130 km/h.
- On winding mountain roads.
- In severe weather conditions.
- There are some special buildings on the roadside (such as high or scattered road guardrail).
- When rain, snow, ice, fog or dust blocks the sensor.
- Narrow objects such as bicycles may not be recognized.
- Lane departure prevention system can only operate normally on the roads with two clear lane lines.
- If your vehicle suspension kit is not approved by us, the system may not work properly.
- Sensors may misidentify temporary construction markings on the road, etc. and give false alarm by mistake.
- The system may not operate in cold and bad weather conditions such as rain, snow or fog and strong contrast lighting can affect the sensor.

WARNING

- Never use a system that is not properly calibrated.
- To ensure the safety of driving and riding, all the passengers must wear seat belts.
- If the sensor is blocked, the system cannot be operated. Clear the sensor in time.
- This system is only a driving assistance system, do not rely solely on this system and drive carefully at all times.
- To ensure the normal operation of the system, it is necessary to keep the sensors in the bumper clean, free of snow and ice, and not covered by other objects.
- If this system does not work properly, turn off the system immediately, please go to authorized service station for inspection and repair as soon as possible.

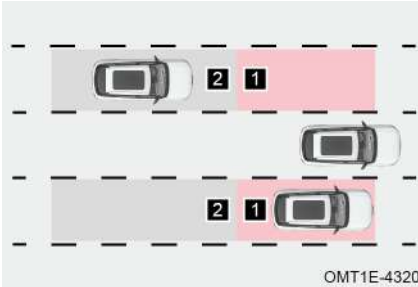
5-7. Blind Spot Detection (BSD) System

Blind Spot Detection (BSD) System (If Equipped)

BSD system is used to monitor presence of moving vehicles in left and right rear areas of your vehicle and inform driver related information to remind the driver for driving safety and lane-changing safety. This system extends Lane Change Assist (LCA) system and Rear Cross Traffic Alert (RCTA) system, Rear Cross Traffic Braking (RCTB) system etc.

⚠ WARNING

The BDS system only offers assistance to the driver. It may not work properly under all driving conditions, weather conditions, traffic conditions or road conditions.

Activating Blind Spot Detection (BSD) system / Lane Change Assist (LCA) system

When speed increases to 15 km/h or more, BSD system enters activating; When speed is decreases from more than 15 km/h to 10 km/h, BSD system enters pre-activating.

- 1** Detection area of BSD system.
- 2** Vehicle approaches detection area of BSD system.

Level I: If a vehicle enters detection area and meets alarm conditions, level alarm I is triggered. "🚗" yellow indicator on rear view mirror remains on, "🚗" green indicator in instrument cluster remains on.

Level II: On base of level I, turn on the turn signal light in the same side. After level alarm II is triggered, "🚗" yellow indicator on rear view mirror blinks, "🚗" yellow indicator in instrument cluster blinks, alarm sounds.

📖 READ

- BSD can be set in audio system. For details, refer to "Audio System".
- When vehicle is in READY state, BSD system turns on by default.

⚠ CAUTION

- Blind Spot Detection (BSD) system may detects stationary objects on or near a road (such as guardrails, tunnels, side walls, and parked vehicles) to turn on warning light.
- When towing or attaching accessories to rear of vehicle (such as a bicycle carrier), turn off BSD system. Otherwise, radar radio waves will be affected, causing system work abnormally.
- When lots of snow or ice accumulates on rear bumper and near radar sensor, or if drive on snowy road for a long time, BSD system may not work.

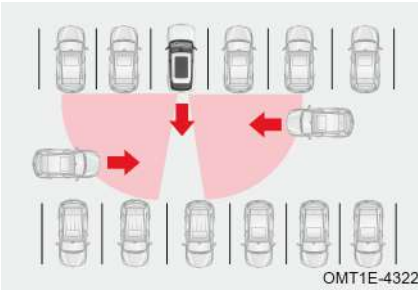
Blind Spot Detection (BSD) system indicator

During operation, level alarm I "🚗" green indicator in instrument cluster remains on; level alarm II "🚗" yellow indicator in instrument cluster blinks.

When there is a fault, "🚗" yellow indicator in instrument cluster remains on.

5. DRIVING ASSIST

Rear Cross Traffic Alert (RCTA) System (If Equipped)



Shift the shift position to R and vehicle speed is less than 15 km/h, rear traffic crossing anti-collision system is activated; In other gear positions, system is in standby status.

When a target vehicle is approaching from left rear/right rear and alarm conditions are met, left/right outside rear view mirror "🚗" indicator blinks to inform driver there is a target vehicle approaching and risk of collision exists.

READ

Rear cross traffic alert system can be set in audio system. For details, refer to "Audio System".

Rear Cross Traffic Braking (RCTB) System (If Equipped)

RCTB function sounds alarm to driver and assists in braking when encountering vehicles or pedestrians crossing the road when exiting a vertical/inclined parking space. RCTB function can help driver avoid collisions with vehicles or pedestrians crossing the road, especially if the driver's view is blocked by vehicles parked next to them.

Activation conditions for RCTB

- All doors are closed.
- Steering wheel angle is less than the threshold.
- Vehicle speed is lower than 15 km/h.
- Vehicle is in reverse gear.

READ

Reverse emergency braking can be set in audio system. For details, refer to "Audio System".

⚠ WARNING

- RCTB is a driving assistance function, which cannot violate laws of physics and has certain limitations. Driver must always keep control of the vehicle and be fully responsible for the vehicle.
- Certain scenarios will affect and weaken the detection of sensor, the system may perform unnecessary warning and braking, or fail to detect all obstacles.
- The area around sensor must not be modified in any way, it is recommended to turn off Rear Cross Traffic Braking (RCTB) System after modification, otherwise the system may perform brake unnecessarily.

Door Open Warning System (DOW)

Door open warning system is used to detect the approaching vehicles and bicycles behind in both adjacent lanes through sensor, and send an alarm if there is a risk when opening door, to remind the driver and passenger that do not open the door at this time.

Activation conditions for door open warning function: In any gear position, vehicle is stationary.

■ Front door warning

When there is a vehicle entering the detection area and the alarm conditions are met, if front door on corresponding side is not opened, the outside rear view mirror "🚗" indicator on corresponding side remains on; If front door is opened, the outside rear view mirror "🚗" indicator on corresponding side blinks accompanied with sound alarm.

■ Rear door warning

When there is a vehicle entering the detection area and the alarm conditions are met, if rear door on corresponding side is not opened, the door indicator on corresponding side remains on; If rear door is opened, the door indicator on corresponding side blinks accompanied with sound alarm.

📖 READ

Door open warning can be set in audio system. For details, refer to "Audio System".

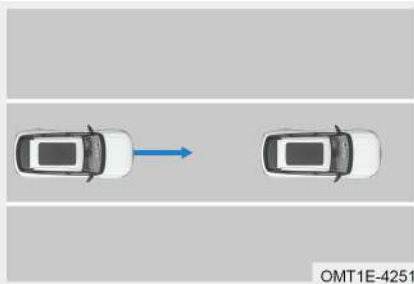
5. DRIVING ASSIST

CAUTION

- Door open warning system will be kept in operating condition (except for arming) within 5 minutes after vehicle is powered off. After unlocking from outside, door open warning system will also change to operating condition after any door is opened and closed.
- Do not open doors when indicator on outside rear view mirror or indicator on door is blinking, and open doors after confirming that there is no vehicle behind and it is safe.
- When distance between vehicle behind and your vehicle is short, an alarm will also be given if speed of vehicle behind is low and collision time between vehicle behind and your vehicle is less than specified value.
- When distance between vehicle behind and your vehicle is long, an alarm will not be given if speed of vehicle behind is high and collision time between quickly approaching vehicle behind and your vehicle exceeds specified value.

Rear Collision Warning System (RCW)(If Equipped)

After rear collision warning system is turned on, vehicle will send an alarm to remind driver when there is a vehicle approaching rapidly behind and there is a risk of collision with the vehicle.



Activation conditions: The vehicle shift position is not in R and the vehicle speed is 15 km/h or more.

READ

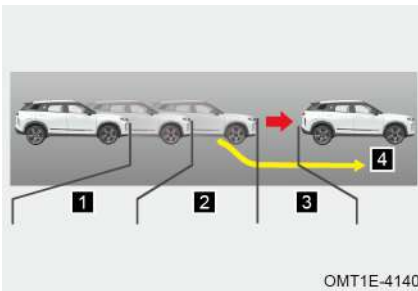
Rear collision warning can be set in audio system. For details, refer to "Audio System".

5-8. Automatic Emergency Braking System (AEB) / Front Collision Warning System (FCW)

Automatic Emergency Braking System (AEB) / Front Collision Warning System (FCW) (If Equipped)

When vehicle is about to hit a vehicle or pedestrian ahead, AEB and FCW work together, sounding an alarm to remind driver, if driver cannot respond quickly enough, vehicle will brake automatically, reducing loss from collision.

Activating AEB / FCW




- 1 Start pre-warning before impacting.
- 2 Start braking partly before impacting.
- 3 Start emergency braking before impacting.
- 4 If driver reacts correctly (for example, avoid a collision by steering), the following emergency braking is canceled.

READ

- Automatic emergency braking system and forward collision warning system can be set in audio system. For details, refer to "Audio System".
- Some configurations only work on vehicle targets, not pedestrians or cyclists.

CAUTION


- Operating speed range of FCW is 8 - 150 km/h
- Operating speed range of AEB is 5 - 134 km/h (some models do not support).
- Driver need to ensure that seat belts have been fastened, doors are closed. Failure to do so, AEB does not work.
- Turn on ESP, FCW, AEB, otherwise, FCW and AEB do not work.
- "  " yellow indicator in instrument cluster remains on, please go to authorized service station for inspection and repair as soon as possible.
- Driver need to take over vehicle because vehicle does not keep stationary state when vehicle is braked automatically to stopped.
- During AEB is activated, driver quickly rotates steering wheel or depresses accelerator pedal firmly, AEB will exit.
- The system may not be available under special conditions (such as desert roads).

5. DRIVING ASSIST

WARNING

- The driver must control vehicle and operate as needed during the whole driving process to avoid danger.
- AEB only offers assistance to the driver. It may not work properly under all driving conditions, weather conditions, traffic conditions or road conditions.
- The vehicles that can be detected by AEB include passenger vehicles, buses, trucks. For some vehicles, such as such as cement tank trucks, special vehicles with higher or lower chassis, AEB has certain limitations in detecting.
- Automatic emergency braking system (AEB) can only play its best role when it detects characteristics consistent with normal walking, such as person's head, arm swing, leg swing, etc.
- AEB will work when it detects body and bicycle contour information as well as normal cycling movements; AEB does not detect an oncoming cyclist as target.
- AEB is not always capable of detecting vehicles, cyclists or pedestrians, and the system may generate unnecessary braking automatically or do not work for a variety of reasons; AEB is only a driving assist system to reduce severity of collision, it is not always possible to completely avoid collision in the speed range.

Precautions for automatic emergency braking system (AEB)

- AEB can not violate laws of physics and has certain limitations. Driver must always keep control of the vehicle and be fully responsible for the vehicle.
- Driver controls speed and the distance from vehicle ahead according to weathers, road surface conditions, traffic conditions, etc.
- AEB does not react to animals, crossing vehicles, incoming vehicles, bicycles and pedestrians.
- System performance may be greatly limited for targets that cut into the lane quickly, targets that are detected after the vehicle changes lanes, and targets in curves.
- Fasten all seat belts and secure all loads to avoid danger when AEB is triggered.
- When AEB is malfunctioning, " " yellow indicator in instrument cluster remains on, please go to authorized service station for inspection and repair as soon as possible.
- When inspecting the vehicle using a drum tester, FCW and AEB should be turned off.
- When installing non-full size spare tire, it is recommended that customer turns off FCW and AEB, and replace full-size tires of original vehicle in time.
- In some special circumstances, AEB may perform unnecessary warning and braking, such as crossing the track of the road, entering the underground car park turning, etc. Some circumstances will affect and weaken sensor detection, things like a tunnel, light of incoming vehicle, reflection of slippery road.
- Camera are installed behind windshield; Please note that view of sensor should not be covered by pollutants, and front or surrounding areas should not be modified. Especially, when sensor is completely covered by snow, system function will be exited. AEB performance may be reduced or it's function fails due to sensor vibration or collision. In this case, please go to authorized service station for recalibration for sensors as soon as possible.

Precautions mentioned above do not cover all circumstances that may affect AEB normal operation. AEB function may fail to bring the expected effect due to other reasons. Driver must always assume full responsibility for vehicle control anytime.

5. DRIVING ASSIST

5-9. Traffic Jam Assist System (TJA) / Integrated Cruise Assist System (ICA)

Traffic Jam Assist System (TJA) / Integrated Cruise Assist System (ICA) (If Equipped)

Introduction

TJA / ICA detects lane lines through the front view camera to perform vertical and horizontal control for vehicle, providing driving assist and reducing driver's workload under monotonous driving environment or busy traffic.



Activate/deactivate function: When TJA/ICA is in pre-activating or activating state, short press TJA/ICA switch to activate/deactivate TJA/ICA.

Mode switching function: When ACC is in pre-cruising or cruising state, or when TJA/ICA is in pre-activating or activating state, long press TJA/ICA switch to switch between ACC and TJA/ICA modes.

If the TJA/ICA activation conditions are not met at this time, the "⊕" gray indicator on instrument cluster remains on; if the TJA/ICA activation conditions are met at this time, the "⊕" green indicator on instrument cluster remains on.

TJA is used when speed is less than 60 km/h: Vehicle will be kept near lane center. If no lane line is detected, the vehicle follows vehicle ahead as driving target. If neither lane line nor target vehicle is detected, TJA will be turned off.

ICA is used when speed is 60 km/h to 165 km/h: Vehicle will be kept near lane center. If no lane line is detected, ICA will be turned off regardless of whether there is a target vehicle ahead.

Traffic Jam Assist System (TJA)/Integrated Cruise Assist System (ICA) Indicator

When it is pre-activated, "⊕" gray indicator on instrument cluster remains on.

When it is activated, "⊕" green indicator on instrument cluster remains on.

When there is a fault, "⊕" yellow indicator on instrument cluster remains on.

Function limit

TJA / ICA may not work properly in the following conditions:


- Accelerator pedal is depressed.
- Brake pedal is depressed.
- Any exiting condition for ACC exists.
- Overly narrow or wide lanes.

- Too small lane curve radius.
- Lane line is not detected.
- Driver rotates steering wheel actively.
- Hands off steering wheel.
- Turn signal light is turned on.
- Hazard warning light is turned on.
- Vehicle is standstill.

 **WARNING**

- TJA / ICA just offers assistance to you. It may not work properly under some driving conditions, weather conditions, traffic conditions or road conditions.
- The driver must control vehicle, operate as needed in the whole driving process.
- The system may not be available under special conditions (such as desert roads).

Recommended to use Traffic Jam Assist System (TJA)/Integrated Cruise Assist System (ICA)

When the Traffic Jam Assist system (TJA)/Integrated Cruise Assist system (ICA) monitors that the vehicle speed is higher than 60 km/h, the current road line is clear and continues to exist, and the Adaptive Cruise Control system (ACC) is in cruising state, the "  " green indicator on instrument cluster remains on. After a certain period of time, a pop-up screen on instrument cluster prompts "The road conditions are good, it is recommended to turn on intelligent cruise control".

Traffic Jam Assist System (TJA)/Integrated Cruise Assist System (ICA) Exit Reminder

When TJA/ICA exits from activating state, the system sends an alarm sound and a pop-up screen on instrument cluster prompts "Intelligent cruise control has exited, please pay attention" to inform the driver that the function has exited.

When the intelligent cruise control exit reminder is set to on in the audio system, the instrument cluster will pop up reminder when TJA system and ICA system exit; When Intelligent cruise control exit reminder is turned off, the instrument cluster will not pop up the reminder when the system exits.

Precautions for Traffic Jam Assist System (TJA) / Integrated Cruise Assist System (ICA)

For using TJA / ICA, please read the following precautions carefully:

- TJA / ICA is a driving assist system, which can not violate laws of physics and has certain limitations. Driver must always keep control of the vehicle and be fully responsible for the vehicle.

5. DRIVING ASSIST

- Longitudinal control of TJA / ICA is performed by ACC, lateral control of TJA / ICA is performed by LKA, all precautions for ACC and LDP are also applicable to the system.
- TJA / ICA does not provide automatic driving function and does not allow hand off driving. Driver prepares control vehicle anytime to ensure safety under the conditions of turning, crossing, merging into one lane and vehicle ahead cutting.
- TJA / ICA performance is affected by weather, illumination and lane line definition, with significant performance degradation or even loss of function in the case of backlight, sunset, nighttime, road surface covered by snow and ice, and unclear lane lines due to surface worn.
- When TJA / ICA is malfunctioning, "⚠️" yellow indicator in instrument cluster comes on, at this time, TJA / ICA function fails, please go to authorized service station for inspection and repair as soon as possible.

Precautions mentioned above do not cover all circumstances that may affect system normal operation. System function may fail to bring the expected effect due to other reasons. Driver must always assume full responsibility for vehicle control anytime.

5-10. Intelligent Avoidance System

Intelligent Avoidance System (If Equipped)

Introduction

Under active control of Traffic Jam Assist System (TJA) / Integrated Cruise Assist System (ICA) (i.e. driving in the lane), when the vehicle speed is 60 to 130 km/h and is about to overtake a larger vehicle (such as a truck, bus) in the adjacent lane, the system controls the vehicle to move laterally appropriately to keep it away from the large vehicle until overtaking is completed.

READ

Intelligent avoidance system can be set in audio system. For details, refer to "Audio System".

5-11. Drive Away Information System

Drive Away Information System (If Equipped)

Introduction

Drive away information system allows user to relax and focus on other things other than driving when the vehicle is in line at traffic light-controlled intersections or congested roads, and assists the driver to resume driving in time when the traffic environment changes.

■ If the vehicle is waiting in line at traffic light-controlled intersections or congested roads, when the following conditions are met, the system will sound an alarm and instrument cluster will display that the vehicle ahead is moving, which can remind the driver to resume driving:

- Detect that a vehicle ahead is leaving.
- The vehicle is stationary.
- ACC is not activated.

READ

- Drive away information system can be set in audio system. For details, refer to "Audio System".
- When the vehicle is waiting in line, if another vehicle gets between the vehicle and the vehicle ahead, drive away information system abandons the original vehicle target and selects the new vehicle as the new target.

5-12. Tire Pressure Monitoring System (TPMS)

Tire Pressure Monitoring System (TPMS) (If Equipped)

Introduction

TPMS is an active safety configuration and can monitor pressure and temperature of tire in real-time and the information can be checked through information display area. When tire pressure is too low or temperature is too high, tire pressure monitoring system alarms.



When the driving speed of vehicle is higher than 30 km/h and the continuous driving time is more than 45 s, the instrument cluster can display the tire pressure and temperature values in real time.

5. DRIVING ASSIST

When speed is more than 25 km/h for period of time, tire pressure and temperature values will be displayed on instrument cluster in real-time; Vehicle power is turned from OFF mode to ON mode (without power-off), tire pressure and temperature values will also be displayed on instrument cluster.

When speed is more than 25 km/h, if TPMS has not received radio-frequency signal from one or more sensors after several minutes, system malfunction warning. "⚠" yellow indicator on instrument cluster will come on.

READ

Common radio interference sources include vehicle power, driving recorder, air purifier, entrance guard card, remote control, cell phone base station, TV tower, etc.

Low pressure warning



When tire pressure is less than 192 bar and speed is no lower than 25 km/h for a period of time, system will send a low pressure warning, corresponding wheel symbol will blink, current tire pressure value will be displayed and "⚠" yellow indicator in instrument cluster will remain on.

When vehicle power is turned to ON from OFF and tire pressure is lower than 192 bar, system will send a low pressure warning, corresponding wheel symbol will blink, current tire pressure value will be displayed and "⚠" yellow indicator in instrument cluster will remain on.

When low pressure warning occurs, please inflate the tire to 233 bar as soon as possible. After the vehicle is driven at a speed no less than 25 km/h for a period of time, low pressure warning will be automatically canceled.

READ

- Low tire pressure will increase fuel consumption and aggravate tire wear. Serious tire wear may cause a risk of tire blowout.
- When tire pressure is too low, inspect causes of air leakage. Contact the authorized service station for inspection and repair as soon as possible as needed.

High temperature warning



When tire temperature is higher than 85° C and speed is no less than 25 km/h for a period of time, system will send a high temperature warning, corresponding wheel symbol will blink, current tire temperature value will be displayed and "⚠" yellow indicator in instrument cluster will remain on.

When vehicle power is turned from OFF to ON mode, if tire temperature on instrument cluster is higher than 85°C, system will send high pressure warning.

When vehicle power is turned to ON from OFF and tire temperature is higher than 85°C, system will send a high temperature warning, corresponding wheel symbol will blink, current tire temperature value will be displayed and "⚠" yellow indicator on instrument cluster will remain on.

When high temperature warning occurs, after tire temperature is lower than 80°C and the vehicle is driven at a speed no less than 25 km/h for a period of time, high temperature warning will be automatically canceled.

⚠ CAUTION

- When warning for high temperature, stop driving at once to cool down tires naturally. Otherwise, accidents may be caused.
- When tire temperature is too high, it cannot be cooled by pouring cold water, as this may damage the tire, causing an accident.
- When tire temperature is too high, please contact the authorized service station for inspection and repair as soon as possible as needed.

Function limit

TPMS may send system malfunction warning in the following conditions:

- Configuration learning of tire pressure monitoring system is not performed after replacing wheels (spare tire included).
- Sensor may be affected due to electromagnetic shielding caused by installing tire chains, affecting proper operation of TPMS.
- Tire pressure sensor or other components have been damaged, please contact the authorized service station for inspection and repair as soon as possible as needed.

5. DRIVING ASSIST

- TPMS may not operate due to radio interference; And it may be interfered temporarily due to strong electromagnetic radio signals with same frequency (433 MHZ).
- TPMS may not work properly due to interference of electronic equipment (-over standard equipment) installed on vehicle, resulting false alarm.

5-13. Driver Monitoring System



Driver Monitoring System(DMS) (If Equipped)

DMS (Driver Monitoring System) uses the infrared camera arranged in the cabin to monitor driving status of driver in real time and collects the face image of driver (such as yawning, eyes closed, nodding, etc.) and line-of-sight area information in real time, judging the driver status in real time. The camera only captures the face of driver, does not capture the rest of the vehicle. The entire face information captured will not be used for personal identification and will not be stored. The system is enabled by default.

■ Main function

1. Determine if driver is fatigued by monitoring facial expression, eye closure, blinking frequency, etc. of driver. When detecting that driver is in a state of fatigue, pop-up window will display on instrument cluster and an alarm sounds;
2. Determine where the driver is looking and if the driver is distracted by tracking driver line-of-sight. When the driver is detected to be distracted, pop-up window will display on instrument cluster and an alarm sounds;
3. The system is enabled by default every time the vehicle is started, and can be turned off manually on head unit screen. After each power-on, the system will perform self-check, when the camera is blocked or system is malfunctioning, the corresponding prompt will display on instrument cluster.

CAUTION

- DMS can be set in audio system. For details, refer to "Audio System".
- When driver monitor system is activated, "" indicator on the meter comes on; when driver monitor system is abnormal, "" indicator on the meter comes on. Please go to authorized service station for inspection and repair as soon as possible.
- When the vehicle speed is higher than 10 km/h, driver monitor system will sound an alarm when the system detects that driver is in a fatigued driving state.
- When the vehicle speed is greater than 20 km/h, driver monitor system will sound an alarm when the system detects that driver is distracted or does not respond to the reminder.

⚠ WARNING

Driver fatigue monitoring system is only an auxiliary tool. In any case, the driver should be responsible for the safety of the vehicle. Fatigue and distracted driving are strictly prohibited. He/she must always concentrate on driving carefully.

5-14. Parking Assist System**Panoramic View Monitor System (If Equipped)****Introduction**

Panoramic view monitor system collects the surrounding view image of the vehicle through four cameras and displays the surrounding view and land guideline by audio head unit, providing safety and easy parking for driver.

Camera layout

Installation position of front camera: located at intake grille of front bumper.



Installation position of left / right cameras: located at the bottom of left / right outside rear view mirrors.

5. DRIVING ASSIST



Installation position of rear camera: located on center part above rear license plate.

Usage method



■ Entering panoramic view monitor

When vehicle is in READY state, and vehicle speed is 30 km/h or less:

Shift the shift lever to R position to enter panoramic view monitor system.

Click panoramic view monitor switch on the audio system to enter panoramic view monitor system.

It enters panoramic view monitor system when turning with large angle (it is necessary to turn on activate panoramic view monitor when turning in panoramic view monitor setting).

It enters panoramic view monitor system when turning on left / right turn signal lights (it is necessary to turn on activate panoramic view monitor when operating turn signal lights in panoramic view monitor setting).

■ Exiting panoramic view monitor

When speed is more than 30 km/h, it exits the panoramic view monitor system.

After turning vehicle power to OFF mode, it exits the panoramic view monitor system.

When panoramic view monitor system is entered by receiving parking radar obstacle distance signal, move shift lever to N / P position or there is no obstacle distance information, after delaying 15 seconds, it exits the panoramic view monitor system.

When panoramic view monitor system is entered by R position, move shift lever out from R position to exit the panoramic view monitor system after delaying 15 seconds.

When panoramic view monitor system is entered by panoramic view monitor switch, click the switch again to exit the panoramic view monitor system.

When panoramic view monitor system is entered by left / right turn signal lights, turn off left / right turn signal lights to exit the panoramic view monitor system.

⚠ CAUTION

The panoramic view monitor system provides driving assistance convenience, but the object in the image does not reflect the actual size and obstacle distance. Compared to the actual image, the image has a little delay and blind spot. Therefore, the panoramic view function is not a substitute for driver' s operation and judgment. Driver should pay attention to the surroundings and drive safely during turning on / off and using the function.

Switching view



1 Close button

When gear position is not in R, it is possible to exit panoramic view monitor system using close button.

2 2D view button

Unilateral view of front / rear / left / right + splicing view and unilateral view can be switched.

3 3D view button

Click the specific view angle button around the bird's-eye view of vehicle to switch the corresponding 3D view. 3D view can be switched to any view angle by sliding.

4 Setting button

Click to pop up the setting item menu.

5 Wide angle view button

Perform distortion correction on front/rear views and splice them into a wide angle view.

6 Wheel side view button

Wheel side view + splicing view and wheel side view can be switched.

Note: Please refer to the actual vehicle for all display images.

5. DRIVING ASSIST

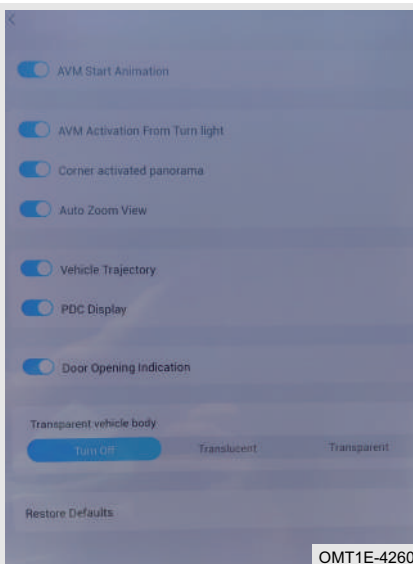
READ

The panoramic view monitor system is very helpful for parking and safety driving. It is recommended that you should be familiar with this function in advance in an open and convenient area.

CAUTION

- Do not scratch the lens when cleaning dirt or snow on the camera surface.
- Before using panoramic view monitor system, make sure to extend outside rear view mirrors and close the back door firmly.
- The object distance seen from the panoramic view monitor system is different from the actual distance.
- Do not place any object on the camera of panoramic view monitor system.
- The panoramic view monitor system has been calibrated professionally before leaving the factory. Any removal / installation and changes on camera installation position and angle without permission may affect the function and effect of panoramic view monitor system.
- The panoramic view monitor system provides driving assistance convenience, but the object in the image does not reflect the actual size and obstacle distance. Comparing with the actual image, the image has a little delay and blind spot. Therefore, the panoramic view function is not a substitute for driver's operation and judgment. Driver should pay attention to the surroundings and drive safely during turning on / off and using the function.

System setting



[AVM Start Animation]: When driver enters the panoramic view monitor system for the first time by panoramic view monitor button, panoramic view starting screen will be displayed.

[AVM Activation From Turn Light]: When left / right turn signal light switch is turned on, 3D view of rear left side or rear right side of vehicle will be displayed.

[Corner acticated panorama]: When steering wheel angle is more than 190°, 3D view of rear left side or rear right side of vehicle will be displayed.

[Auto Zoom View] Enter nearby view automatically based on obstacle distance.

[Vehicle Trajectory]: Move shift lever to R to enter panoramic view monitor, load static / dynamic lane guideline and wheel track line.

[PDC display]: Turn on parking radar display.

[Door Opening Indication]: Remind the status of engine compartment, moon roof, four doors and luggage compartment.

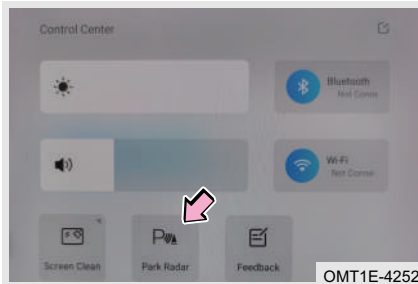
[Transparent vehicle body]: Set transparency of the vehicle model.

[Restore Defaults]: Reset default settings.

Parking Radar System

Introduction

Parking radar system is a radar detection device, adopts radar sensors to detect if there are obstacles in front / rear of vehicle and distance from obstacles. The driver is prompted by the audio system, sound alarm, etc., so as to assist the driver to park safely and easily.



When vehicle is in READY state, slide down from the top right edge of the audio system screen, click parking radar button, parking radar system turns on; when shift lever is not in R, click parking radar button again to exit.

Usage method

When vehicle is in READY state, press parking radar switch on audio system or shift lever is moved to R position, parking radar system is activated, each time the parking radar system is activated, if the parking radar system is normal, parking radar system status indicator comes on and system starts detecting distance at the same time; When a radar sensor detects an obstacle, audio system will display distance from obstacle (red, yellow, green areas) accompanied by alarm sound.

When vehicle is traveling forward and the reversing radar system is activated, when vehicle speed is > 15 km/h, the reversing radar system front and rear sensors stop working. If vehicle speed is < 15 km/h, the parking radar system does not recover, the parking radar system can be turned on / off by pressing parking radar switch.

5. DRIVING ASSIST

Note: If there are malfunctions in parking radar system, it will sound 2s in long tone, and then keep displaying failure information until it is solved.

READ

- Monitoring distance is the shortest vertical distance between obstacle and radar sensor.
- Under activating state of front radar, when applying parking brake, audio head unit will only display arc information, and audio head unit prompt does not sound.
- For models with 8 sensors, move shift lever to R position to activate parking radar system (whether or not parking radar system is turned on before moving shift lever to R position), parking radar system still operates when shifting to other positions.

CAUTION

- For obstacles out of the detection range, radar sensors do not give a warning.
- When moving, be aware that the reverse radar sensors on the other side may get close to other obstacles.

Function limit

Parking radar system may not work normally in the following conditions:

- When vehicle is on a steep slope.
- When driving in snow or in rain.
- Low objects such as rocks, etc. cannot be detected.
- Objects that are higher than bumper cannot be detected.
- Thin objects such as wires, fences and ropes, etc. cannot be detected.
- When vehicle is equipped with a high frequency radio or antenna is in use.
- When radar sensor surfaces are frozen, they will not detect any obstacle.
- When radar sensors are covered by dirt, snow or mud, they may not detect obstacles.
- Objects that easily absorb ultrasonic waves such as soft snow, cotton, sponge, etc. cannot be detected.
- When there is noise near the vehicle, such as vehicle horns, motorcycle engines, air brakes of large vehicles, or other loud noises producing ultrasonic waves.
- If obstacles are detected by multiple radar sensors, the distances between each radar sensor and obstacles are displayed on audio head unit simultaneously, and system sounds according to nearest obstacle.

Cleaning radar sensor



When washing vehicle, use a soft cloth or water (low water pressure) to wash off foreign matter such as snow, mud, and dust on the surface of the radar sensor.

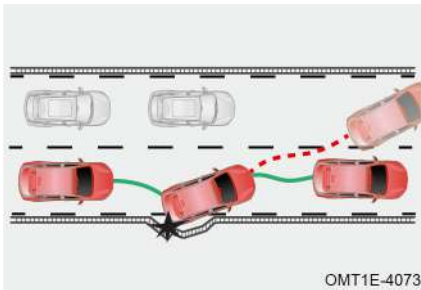
High pressure water flow such as water guns or large external forces may cause damage to the radar sensors. Do not pinch or impact the radar sensors, as this may cause radar sensor to fail to operate normally.

If the buzzer does not sound when reversing, please check the followings:

- If there is foreign matter on the surface of radar sensor.
- Radar sensors cannot detect wires and fences. Check if radar sensor surface is frozen.
- If the vehicle has been parked for a long time in hot or cold weather.
- If cause cannot be found, please contact authorized service station for inspection and repair as soon as possible.

5-15. Multi-Collision Brake System (MCB)

Multi-Collision Brake System (MCB) (If Equipped)



When the multi-collision brake system detects that the vehicle has collided, the electronic stability control system performs active braking, and decelerates the vehicle to prevent the vehicle from being collided again. In the process of braking, it can still maintain control of the vehicle, which can further ensure the safety of yourself and passers-by.

Function limit

Under the following conditions, multi-collision brake system may not operate correctly:

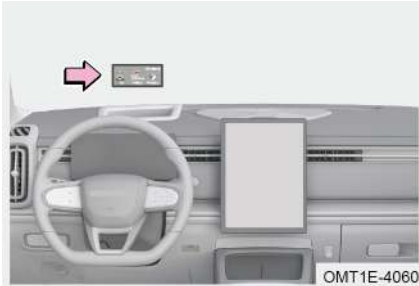
- When there is a malfunction in the airbag system.
- When there is a malfunction in the electronic stability program system.
- When the electronic stability program system is turned off.

5. DRIVING ASSIST

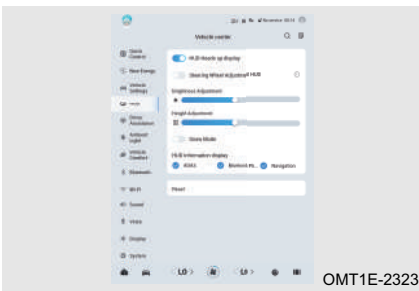
5-16. Head Up Display (HUD) System

Head Up Display (HUD) System (If Equipped)

Head Up Display (HUD) System can project driving information (such as vehicle speed, driving mileage), navigation information, driving assistance system and other information on front windshield, which is an effective visual area within the driver's field of vision, so that the driver can see the vehicle information when driving normally without lowering head.



When head up display is turned on, a virtual image is formed in front of driver's field of vision to display the corresponding vehicle speed, driving mileage and other information.



After head up display system is set to turn on in head unit, the following settings can be perform: Steering wheel adjustment HUD on/off, brightness adjustment, height adjustment, snow mode on/off, HUD information display (ADAS / Bluetooth / Navigation) and restore default.

READ

It is recommended that the driver uses the snow mode in snowy conditions or when the visibility is not very good.

CAUTION

- In some special weather conditions (such as rain, snow, strong sunlight), head up display information may be unclear or disturbed.
- When the head up display position is blocked, the head up display system cannot be used.
- The front windshield film may affect the brightness of the head up display information.
- If the driver wears polarized sunglasses, there is a risk of not being able to see the head-up display information.

5-17. Driving Recorder (DVR)

Driving Recorder (DVR) (If Equipped)

The driving recorder is an instrument that records image, sound and other relevant information during driving. It can record video image and sound of the whole driving process, which can provide evidence for traffic accidents. People who like automatic driving can also use it to record driving process.



Please insert TF card of Class 10 or above version before power on, and the partition format of the card is FAT 32.

■ Driving recorder connection and display



The driving recorder is connected to head unit through Wi-Fi and is displayed and operated on head unit. Click driving recorder application to enter the real-time screen of it. Swipe inwards from the left/right edge of the screen to return.

 READ

- There is a certain delay in Wi-Fi transmission, so the real-time screen displayed on the head unit has a certain delay compared with the actual screen in front of the vehicle seen by the human eyes.
- The Wi-Fi connection between head unit and driving recorder may be disconnected after exiting the driving recorder. When clicking the driving recorder application again, it needs to reconnect Wi-Fi. This process will take a certain time. Please wait for a while.


■ Normal recording

- Start vehicle, the driving recorder starts recording, the red dot in middle of real-time screen on head unit flashes, and REC is displayed. And the time in middle of the screen increases by seconds.

5. DRIVING ASSIST

- The normal recording is recorded and stored in normal video folder by sections. When the normal video folder is full, the earliest recorded video will be automatically overwritten.

READ

Click "  " on the real-time screen of head unit to turn on/off the sound recording which is off by default. Some configuration models have no recording function. Please refer to the actual vehicle configuration.

CAUTION

Do not unplug the TF card directly during video recording. If TF card is needed to unplug, please pause the recording or turn off DVR before unplugging.

■ Emergency recording

- When DVR is in normal operating state, if vehicle is involved in a collision, DVR is not damaged and this function is activated, DVR will automatically record video for 10 s before and after the collision separately.
- The emergency recording is recorded and stored in emergency video folder. When the emergency video folder is full, the earliest recorded video will be automatically overwritten, while the head unit will prompt with text: Driving recorder emergency video folder is full and has been cycle for coverage, please check it in time.

READ

In case of accidental collision, emergency video files are not guaranteed in each collision due to the insufficient collision intensity or other factors. If no emergency video is generated, you can find the video segment when accident occurs in normal video folder.

■ Parking monitoring

- With engine turned off, if vehicle is involved in a collision, DVR is not damaged and this function is activated, DVR will be turned on and record automatically for 20 s and then turn off.
- The parking monitoring is recorded and stored in emergency video folder. When the emergency video folder is full, the earliest recorded video will be automatically overwritten, while the head unit will prompt with text: Driving recorder emergency video folder is full.

 READ

- The parking monitoring function is on by default and user can turn off/on the parking monitoring function in head unit.
- When the battery power is lower than a certain voltage value and the parking monitoring function is turned on, the driving recorder cannot be enabled by vibration.
- In case of accidental collision, the collision intensity may be insufficient or Others factors may exist, which does not guarantee that the driving recorder can enable every time to record video.

■ Taking photos and snapshot

- Click "📷" to take photos, one photo at each time.
- When the steering wheel custom button "☆" is set to snapshot by DVR, the "☆" button can be pressed to snapshot.

■ Photo/video playback

Click album on the real-time screen of the head unit to see the video, emergency video and photo in the memory card.

 READ

- In video or emergency video, slide up and down, select and click a video to enter the playback screen to play the video. You can pause, continue, switch to the previous/next video, and delete video.
- In the video file list interface, long press a video, a small circle will appear in the top right corner of the video thumbnail, with "✓" indicating that the video is selected, multiple or single choice is allowed, click Delete to delete the selected video. Deleted video is not recoverable.
- During video recording, when the overlay switch of driving information is ON, you can see the date, time and driving status when recording this video in the information bar of video playback screen.

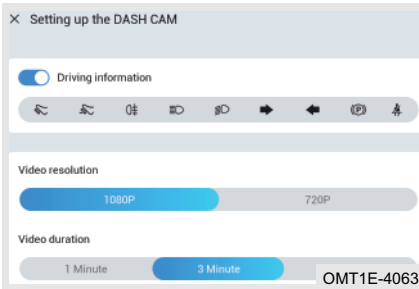
 CAUTION

In the process of deleting videos or photos, do not unplug TF card or cut power off to avoid damaging TF card.

5. DRIVING ASSIST

■ Setting

You can enter the setting menu screen of the driving recorder by clicking the setting soft button. The setting items of the driving recorder include the following contents:



Driving information overlay: ON (- default) / OFF.

Video resolution: 1080P (default), 720P.

Video duration: 1 minute, 3 minutes (- default), 5 minutes.

Snapshot: Photo, Video, Photo + Video (default).

Vibration sensitivity: High, Medium (- default), Low.

HDR: ON (default) / OFF.

Parking monitoring: ON (default) / OFF.

Display TF capacity, and TF memory card can be formatted.

Display hardware version number and software version number of the recorder, and the software of driving recorder can be updated.

Restore the factory default setting of recorder.

READ

In the process of formatting the memory card and upgrading the software, do not unplug the card or cut power off to avoid damaging the memory card or recorder.

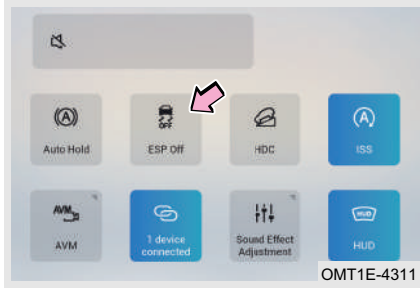
5-18. Braking Force Control System

Electronic Stability Program System (ESP)

Introduction

ESP keeps vehicle stability when oversteering or understeering. When oversteering or understeering is detected, system applies brake to one or more wheels to enhance control of vehicle stability. ESP also extends some functions (such as ABS and EBD, etc.) to ensure the lateral stability when vehicle driving.

Usage method



Turn vehicle power supply to ON mode, slide down from the top right edge of the audio system screen, click ESP OFF switch to turn off ESP; click ESP OFF switch again to turn on ESP.

READ

- When driving vehicle for the first time, ESP is on by default.
- ESP cannot be turned off during operation.

Electronic stability program system (ESP) indicator

When ESP is turned off, "🚗" yellow indicator in instrument cluster remains on.

When ESP is operating, "🚗" yellow indicator in instrument cluster blinks.

When ESP is malfunctioning, "🚗" yellow indicator in instrument cluster remains on.

READ

Replacing the non-full size spare tire will cause the electronic stability program system (ESP) abnormal alarm, it will automatically return to normal when driving 1 km after replacing the normal size tire.

WARNING

- When ESP is malfunctioning, please go to authorized service station for inspection and repair as soon as possible.
- Even when ESP is working, high speed driving, sharp turns or poor road conditions can cause accidents.
- ESP function does not completely ensure that you can take over vehicle if it has lost control due to various extreme situations. Even with ESP, always follow laws and regulations to avoid accidents.
- The function of driver assistance relies on ESP for safety. If ESP is turned off, many functions of driver assistance will not be available, temporary malfunction light may appear on the instrument cluster to indicate that the function is not available (not driver assistance system failure). In order to continue to use the driver assistance function, turn on ESP function again, the driver assistance function will recover.

5. DRIVING ASSIST

Function limit

Under the following conditions, Electronic Stability Program System (ESP) needs to be turned off:

- When driving with tire chains.
- When starting vehicle on power tester.
- When driving on roads with deep snow or loose gravel.

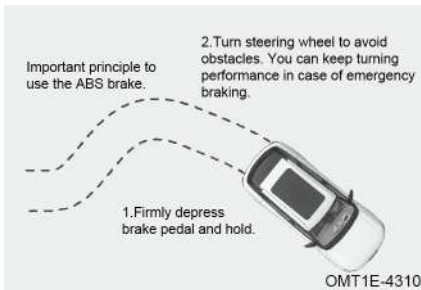
READ

To improve vehicle traction when driving on sand or gravel, it is recommended to turn ESP off.

Anti-lock Brake System (ABS)

Introduction

ABS can prevent wheel from being locked in excessive braking or braking on a slippery road, avoiding vehicle sideways slippage or vehicle drifting and keeping vehicle stability.



ABS does not function during normal braking and it will be turned on immediately only during sudden braking (brake pedal pulsates with noise, ensuring brake performance and steering performance, if the space is enough, the vehicle can also avoid obstacles). Never release brake pedal in this case.


CAUTION

- Always drive carefully and make sure to decelerate during turning.
- When ABS is malfunctioning, please go to authorized service station for inspection and repair as soon as possible.
- Although ABS can ensure the best braking effect, braking distance will vary largely due to road conditions.

WARNING

- Also, ABS cannot eliminate risks arising from close-following driving, driving through water, turning quickly or driving on poor road surfaces and cannot avoid accidents caused by inattentive or inappropriate driving.
- ABS cannot ensure that brake distance can be shortened in any situations. When vehicle is equipped with tire chain, on sand or snow covered roads, vehicles with ABS may require a longer braking distance compared to vehicles without ABS.

Anti-lock brake system (ABS) indicator

When there is a fault in ABS, "  " yellow indicator in instrument cluster remains on.

WARNING

When ABS indicator and brake system indicator remain on at the same time, park your vehicle on a safety place far away from major traffic and go to authorized service station for inspection and repair immediately.

Function limit

■ ABS will make operation sound in following conditions:

- Rebounding sound of brake pedal.
- Impacting sound between suspension and vehicle body due to emergency braking.
- Operation sound of motor, solenoid valve and return pump in hydraulic unit.
- Operation sound of solenoid valve when EBD is intervened in braking.
- Buzz will be heard for a short time after vehicle is powered on or starting engine, indicating system self-test is performed.

■ Always maintain a safe distance from vehicle ahead in the following situations:

- When driving on rough roads.
- When driving on roads with potholes or uneven surfaces.
- When driving with tire chains.
- When driving on dirt, gravel or snow-covered roads.

CAUTION

Tire size and tread pattern wear will seriously affect ABS performance. Replacement tires should have same size, load capacity and structure as original one. When a tire is faulty, it is recommended to replace with a original brand at a authorized service station.

WARNING

- When driving on rainy days, properly control the vehicle speed, because if the wheel spins or slips, ABS will cannot control the vehicle.
- Although ABS can help to control vehicle, make sure to drive carefully, maintain a moderate speed and keep safe distance from preceding vehicles. There are certain limitations in vehicle stability and steering wheel operation effect even ABS operates.

Electric Brake Force Distribution System (EBD)

EBD automatically adjusts braking force distribution ratio of front and rear axles according to axial load transfer difference caused by braking to improve braking efficiency. In addition, EBD works together with ABS to improve braking stability. Also, when braking round a corner, brake force of inside and outside wheels can be adjusted to improve braking stability.

Emergency Brake Assist (EBA) System

EBA system is used to shorten the braking distance in emergency braking. In an emergency, driver usually brakes in time, but generally does not apply the maximum braking force, thus lengthening braking distance. In this case, EBA system will operate: When driver depresses brake pedal rapidly in an emergency with insufficient force, EBA system quickly increases brake pressure to maximum level, making anti-lock brake system to short braking distance more quickly and effectively.

Traction Control System (TCS)

During starting off or rapidly acceleration, drive wheels may slip. In case of on a slippery road such as snowy or icy road, direction could get out of control and cause a dangerous situation. When TCS detects that driven wheel speed is lower than drive wheel speed (a kind of wheel slip symptom) using sensor, it sends a signal to adjust ignition timing, reduce throttle opening, downshift or brake wheels so that wheel no longer slips.

Uphill Assist System(HAC)

HAC system can prevent vehicle from moving backward when starting off on uphill. After vehicle is stationary, HAC system adopts longitudinal acceleration sensor to determine if the vehicle is on a slope. When vehicle starts from stationary state on a slope to drive or reverse upwards, HAC system automatically operates. When starting off, after driver releases brake pedal, system maintains previous braking pressure for 2 to 3 seconds to hold the vehicle. As increasing of drive torque, brake pressure reduces gradually, avoiding accidents caused by moving backward when starting off on a slope.

Brake Assist System (BAS)

Generates an increased level of braking force after the brake pedal is depressed when the system detects a panic stop situation.

Brake Override System (BOS)

When the accelerator and brake pedals are depressed at the same time, the engine output may be restrained.

Start Assist

Torque output when vehicle starts off is increased to easily start off.

5-19. Plug-in Hybrid Electric Vehicle System (PHEV)

PHEV can be driven by fuel energy and electricity energy, which combines the advantages of electric vehicle and fuel vehicle, there is no need to worry about driving mileage of electric vehicle and high fuel consumption of fuel vehicle. It satisfies economy, energy-saving and environmental friendly.

Power Battery

Basic function of power battery

The main method of charging power battery is to plug in the external power gun for charging, and power battery can also be charged by motor when braking, sliding or starting engine.

The vehicle has intelligent recharging function. When the function is triggered, 12 V battery will be charged by power battery. Therefore, when the vehicle is started again after being placed for a period of time, SOC or pure electric driving mileage displayed on instrument cluster will decrease, which is a normal phenomenon.

■ Since the performance of power battery will decline in low temperature environment, the following treatment methods will help you to use the vehicle better:

1. If ambient temperature is lower than -10°C , it is recommended to park vehicle in a warm house or a garage with room temperature.
2. If there is no warm house or garage with room temperature, the vehicle has charging and heating functions of plug-in charging gun. If charging gun is connected, it is recommended to select travel reservation function half an hour before departure, which can increase power battery temperature to the best state and turn on air conditioning in advance, so that you can have a better driving experience.

■ The following methods will help power battery to be in the best state:

1. It is recommended to charge the power battery fully with a charging device at least once every month.
2. When SOC is less than 20% during driving, avoid sudden acceleration and high-speed driving, and charge it as soon as possible.
3. When the vehicle is not used for a long time, park it in a place where the ambient temperature is lower than 45°C and there is no ponding, and try to avoid direct sunlight.
4. When the vehicle is not used for a long time, SOC displayed on instrument cluster may be inaccurate. Do not judge the remaining power of power battery based on SOC, and charge battery fully before driving.
5. When the vehicle is not used for a long time, the power battery should be charged and maintain the SOC at 50%-70%. Failure to do so may cause

5. DRIVING ASSIST

excessive discharge of the power battery and decrease the power battery performance, and vehicle malfunction and damage caused by this will not be guaranteed.

6. For a new vehicle, when the power battery is in normal condition, vehicle driving mileage may fluctuate due to driving habits (such as frequent acceleration and deceleration), road conditions (such as driving on a large and long slope), temperature (such as low temperature) and whether electric equipment (such as air conditioning) is turned on, which is a normal phenomenon.
7. Power battery is a special chemical product, which needs to be used and maintained properly, so proper daily use and maintenance is very important for performance maintenance. At the same time, power battery will decline naturally due to chemical characteristics. Therefore, for vehicles that have been used for a period of time, when trip mileage decreases after battery is fully charged, it is recommended to go to authorized service station for inspection. If authorized service station checks that the total capacity of power battery is in normal range, the decrease of trip mileage may be caused by external reasons such as driving habits, temperature etc.

Power battery recovery

■ Recover and disposal range

Power battery whose residual capacity and charge and discharge performance after using cannot guarantee the vehicle normal driving, or is not used again after it is removed due to other reasons.

■ Recover and disposal process

The power battery is installed on the vehicle chassis, which consists of lithium battery cells. Disposal at will can cause pollution and harm to the environment. According to relevant regulations, vehicle owner is obliged to hand over used power battery to recycling service stations. It is strictly forbidden to hand over used power battery to other units or individuals. The vehicle owner shall be responsible for environmental pollution or safety accidents caused by unauthorized removal or disassembly of the power battery.

Be sure to dispose according to the following information or requirements. For details on the recycling and disposal of power battery, please go to authorized service station.

1. The temporary recycling service station for used power battery is the local authorized service station.
2. The disassembly of power battery must be performed by professional serviceman with certification qualification of power battery supplier.
3. The power battery belongs to the 9th category of dangerous goods and must be transported by vehicles with the 9th category of dangerous goods transportation qualification.

4. The removed power battery should be stored in a normal temperature, dry environment, away from flammable materials, heat sources, water sources and other hazards.

 **WARNING**

- Do not dispose of power battery by yourself.
- Do not sell, transfer or modify power battery.
- When power battery needs to be repaired, removed, replaced and disposed, always go to authorized service station.

Usage precautions for power battery

Power battery belongs to high voltage energy-storage device and dangerous goods. It is necessary to go to authorized service station to have professional serviceman install and maintain power battery and observe related safety regulations strictly; Non-professional serviceman and improper operation and use may cause serious results such as electric shock, combustion, explosion etc. Non-professional serviceman are prohibited to install, repair power battery and abuse it beyond specified range. Power battery damage and other losses caused by using it without observing requirements or beyond specified range will not be guaranteed. Pay attention to the following:

1. Anti-shock and anti-collision

The battery cells of power battery are connected in series and equipped with management system and various sensor devices, so be careful when driving on uneven roads to prevent power battery from bumping.

2. Heat insulation in any environment

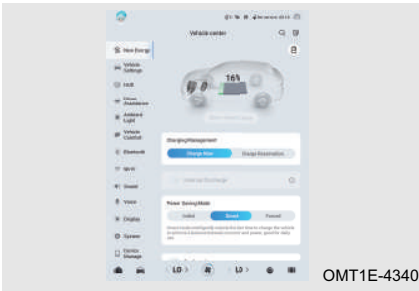
Keeping power battery in the best operating temperature range can greatly prolong the service life of battery and improve safety performance, so try to park vehicle in heat insulation and ventilated places.

3. Moisture-proof and water-proof

Power battery is a high voltage energy-storage device with many high voltage control circuits and battery cells. The liquid entering power battery may cause short circuit, electricity leakage and corrosion of battery cells, electric circuits and connectors. Make sure that power battery will not be soaked by various liquids and moist air will not enter the power battery.

5. DRIVING ASSIST

New Energy



Energy Consumption List: Click to query total mileage/total driving mileage/last 50 km/since startup/since reset.

Energy Flow: Display current energy flow condition of vehicle.

Slow Charger Unlock: Click to unlock the slow charging gun.

Charging Management: Set Charge Now/Charge Reservation.

External Discharge: ON/OFF.

Power Saving Mode: Set Initial/Smart/Forced.

Book A Trip: ON/OFF. The appointment trip time can be set separately after it is turned on.

Pure Electric Mileage Display: Set Total Battery Level/Standard Mileage/Dynamic Mileage.

Driving Distance Display: Set Total Distance/HEV Distance/EV Distance.

ECO Mode: ON/OFF.

Disclaimer: Click to check the disclaimer.

WARNING

The pedestrian protection sound can only be turned off when there is no other road user within a short distance and the surrounding environment clearly does not require a prompt sound. As long as pedestrian is likely to appear around the vehicle, pedestrian protection sound needs to be turned on.

Energy Flow



New energy screen displays current energy flow condition of vehicle.

Energy Flow Condition	Description
Pure electric drive	Only motor drives the vehicle, the engine is not working.
Extended range mode	Engine charges the power battery, and motor drives the vehicle to drive.
Parallel drive	Engine and motor drive vehicle at the same time.
Engine direct drive	Engine drives vehicle directly.
Generating electricity when driving	Engine charges power battery when engine drives the vehicle.
Generating electricity when parking	Engine charges power battery when parking.
Feedback brake	Motor recovers braking energy and charges power battery.

Energy Recovery Intensity

When vehicle is coasting, the system will convert the mechanical energy of motor into electrical energy to recover energy and charge the power battery, thus reducing energy consumption.



Set the Energy Recovery Intensity (Low/Medium/High) on New Energy screen.

Energy Recovery	Function
Energy recovery intensity is low	The vehicle coasts for a long distance and driving comfort is better.
Energy recovery intensity is medium	It is suitable for most driving habits because it combines driving comfort and energy recovery efficiency.
Energy recovery intensity is high	Vehicle deceleration is highest and it can recover more energy.

5. DRIVING ASSIST

READ

- Under conditions of a higher SOC or low ambient temperature, there may be difference in the driving experience of energy recovery.
- Energy recovery intensity is set as low or medium for a better balance of driving comfort and economy. Energy recovery intensity is set as high, which may cause a dragging feeling, so it is recommended for high speed driving.

Operating Mode

Power mode



With vehicle in READY state, press EV/HEV button to switch the power mode; The corresponding mode indicator on instrument cluster comes on to prompt you that power mode is switched successfully.



With vehicle in READY state, click HEV/EV/EV+ button in Audio System - Vehicle Center - Quick Control to switch the power mode; The corresponding mode indicator on instrument cluster comes on to prompt you that power mode is switched successfully.

Power Mode		Description
EV mode	EV	The vehicle is driven by pure electricity and the engine does not start.
	EV+	Increase the depth of discharge to provide a longer pure electric driving mileage than EV mode. It is recommended to use this mode only in an emergency to reduce the deep discharge of the battery, which is helpful for improving the maintenance of battery.
HEV mode	HEV	The vehicle is driven by hybrid power, and the engine can start or stop at any time to participate in driving or power generation according to requirements of working conditions.

 READ

- When the power battery level is higher, the vehicle will automatically switch to electric mode (EV mode) if it is in READY state. It is recommended that you prioritize the use of electric mode (EV mode).
- With vehicle in READY state, P gear and HEV mode, when the power battery level is below a certain value, depressing the accelerator pedal can trigger the forced parking power generation function.
- When vehicle runs continuously in electric mode, pure electric driving mileage decreases with the decrease of battery level. When power battery level is too low, it will switch to HEV mode automatically.
- In some conditions (such as low battery level), it may be impossible to switch from HEV mode to electric mode, and “Current Conditions Not Met, Mode Cannot Be Switched” will be displayed on instrument cluster.
- If vehicle is used in electric mode for a long period of time, the lubrication condition of engine may deteriorate due to infrequent use, therefore, the engine will be automatically started for self-maintenance at regular intervals. Once the maintenance is completed, the engine will automatically shut down.

5. DRIVING ASSIST

Driving mode



With vehicle in READY state, press "MODE" button to cycle through the driving modes; The corresponding mode indicator on instrument cluster comes on, accompanied by voice reminder, to prompt you that driving mode is switched successfully.



With vehicle in READY state, click Eco/NORMAL/Sport button in Audio System - Vehicle Center - Quick Control to switch the driving mode; The corresponding mode indicator on instrument cluster comes on, accompanied by voice reminder, to prompt you that driving mode is switched successfully.



With vehicle in READY state, press "MODE" button to pop up the driving mode screen in audio system, then manually select the driving mode; The corresponding mode indicator on instrument cluster comes on, accompanied by voice reminder, to prompt you that driving mode is switched successfully.

Driving Mode	Description
Normal mode	Combine vehicle power and economy, which is suitable for all kinds of roads.
Eco mode	Improve the fuel economy of the vehicle, which is suitable for the flat and hard roads such as urban roads and paved roads.
Sport mode	Improve vehicle power and realizes higher response speed and driving experience. It is suitable for wide and flat roads with few vehicles (such as motorway).

 READ

The adaptive cruise control system in Eco mode provides a gentle acceleration, and the adaptive cruise control system in sport mode provides a faster acceleration.

Power saving mode



Power saving mode can be selected in new energy screen according to your needs.

It is recommended to select the Smart power saving mode, which can achieve a better balance of economy and power.

Power Saving Mode	Description	Common Usage Scenarios
Initial mode	The maximum battery power can be discharged to achieve the maximum pure electric driving mileage.	Suitable for users who drive daily and have charging conditions.
Smart power saving mode	Prioritize the fuel economy, intelligently select the best charging time while driving, and reserve energy for pure electric or high-power driving.	Suitable for various usage scenarios, and this mode is recommended.
Forced power saving mode	Prioritize the battery level holding to get as close as possible to the target battery level, so as to reserve energy for pure electric or high-power driving. Fuel economy will deteriorate in this mode.	Suitable for camping and other usage scenarios that require external discharging.

5. DRIVING ASSIST

READ

- In non-forced power saving mode, when vehicle is powered off and then powered on again, it will enter the battery level mode memorized before powering off.
- In forced power saving mode, different target battery levels can be set based on specific needs, at the same time, you can select whether to memorize the forced power saving settings. If "Memorized" is selected, it is still the forced power saving next time the power is turned on; If "Not memorized" is selected, it will switch to Smart power saving next time the power is turned on.

Operating mode linkage

Power Mode		Driving Mode	Power Saving Mode		
			Initial mode	Smart power saving mode	Forced power saving mode
EV mode	EV	Normal mode	√	√	√
		Eco mode	√	√	√
	EV+	Eco mode	√	√	√
HEV mode	HEV	Normal mode	√	√	√
		Eco mode	√	√	√
		Sport mode	√	√	√

Electric mode supports all power saving modes, electric mode (EV mode) does not support the sport mode, and electric mode (EV+ mode) does not support the normal mode or sport mode; If sport mode is selected in electric mode, the power mode will automatically switch to HEV mode even if there is no operation in the power mode.

HEV mode supports all driving modes and power saving mode, and switches to electric mode by switching operation; If the switching conditions are not met, it will remain in the HEV mode, and "Current Conditions Not Met, Mode Cannot Be Switched" will be displayed on instrument cluster.

Pure electric driving mileage

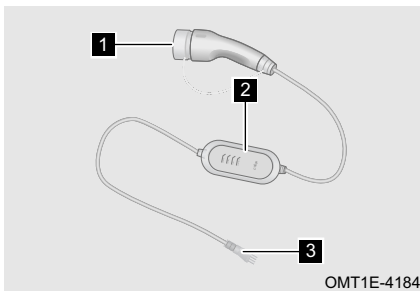
■ Pure electric driving mileage may be affected by the following factors:

1. Driving habits: Frequent acceleration and deceleration or intense driving will result in shorter mileage compared to constant speed driving.
2. Usage of equipment such as air conditioning: Turning on the air conditioning for cooling or heating will result in shorter mileage compared to turning off.
3. Road conditions: Bumpy roads or long uphill roads will result in shorter mileage compared to flat and dry road conditions.
4. Temperature: Available power or driving mileage will decrease as the temperature decreases, and low temperature environments will result in shorter mileage compared to room temperature environments.
5. During actual usage, driving mileage will also show different variations due to weather, roads, congestion and other factors.

Charging Device

External wire harness charging port assembly

External wire harness charging port assembly is a charging device equipped with the vehicle. Connect the vehicle to a socket (220V/20A special AC circuit and three-hole socket) that meets the local national standard to charge the vehicle. Using special AC circuit can prevent short circuit or line trip protection due to high power when charging power battery. If special AC circuit is not used, the normal operation of other devices on the line may be effected.



- 1 Charging gun
- 2 Control box
- 3 Charging plug (Due to market differences, the charging plug style is subject to the actual vehicle)

5. DRIVING ASSIST

WARNING

- It must be well grounded during use.
- Never step on, crush, drag or bend the cable.
- When charging is stopped, unplug the charging gun first and then power supply plug.
- Never use adapter cable or adapter, and never plug and unplug with power on.
- Do not disassemble and maintain without permission, otherwise the results are at your own risk.
- When not in use, insert vehicle plug dust cover completely.
- Never expose the product to flammable gas to avoid danger.
- Make sure that charging port is dry and free of foreign matters to avoid short circuit that may cause fire.
- This product is only used when the power supply is equipped with RCD short-circuit protector.
- Never destroy the product violently, drop it or place heavy objects on the product surface.
- When using this product, confirm that the plug is tightly inserted and the indicator is normal.
- This product is only used for applicable model, and should not be used in other vehicles to avoid damage to the vehicle.
- When starting vehicle, it is necessary to confirm that charging gun has been unplugged completely, otherwise charging device and vehicle may be damaged.
- Never put this product in water, liquid or snow and rain. Avoid plugging or unplugging the plug with wet hands to avoid personal injuries.
- The operating temperature is -30°C - $+ 50^{\circ}\text{C}$. Never put the product near high-temperature objects or expose it to sunlight.
- Be sure to use genuine charging cable. If other charging cables are used, the power battery may not be charged normally and cause malfunction.
- If this product cannot charge normally, please go to authorized service station for inspection and repair.

CAUTION

AC charging gun must be equipped with leakage protection and temperature monitoring devices, with a current limit of 230 V/10 A/50 Hz.

Control box indicators

Operating/ Malfunctioning Condition	Power Indicator (Green)	Charging Indicator (Red)	Malfunction Indicator (Red)	Charging Completion Indicator (Green)
Initial state	Remain on	Flash once	Flash once	Flash once
Waiting for charging mode	Remain on	Turn off	Turn off	Turn off
Normal charging mode	Remain on	Remain on	Turn off	Turn off
Charging completed	Remain on	Turn off	Turn off	Remain on
Self-checking	Remain on	Turn off	Flash	Turn off
Communication malfunction	Remain on	Remain on	Flash	Turn off
Input voltage overvoltage/ undervoltage	Remain on	Turn off	Remain on	Turn off
Grounded malfunction	Remain on	Turn off	Remain on	Flash
Overcurrent malfunction	Remain on	Flash	Remain on	Turn off
Leakage malfunction	Remain on	Turn off	Flash	Flash
Over temperature protection	Remain on	Remain on	Remain on	Remain on

 CAUTION

Do not attempt to remove or repair control box. If above malfunctions occur, please go to authorized service station.

Troubleshooting common malfunctions**■ Unable to charge**

1. Observe status of indicator and analyze it according to malfunction status.
2. Check if it is grounded well.
3. Check if voltage of power supply is normal.
4. Check if connection of vehicle is normal.

5. DRIVING ASSIST

■ Intermittent charging

1. Observe status of indicator and analyze it according to malfunction status.
2. Check if 220 V AC is stable.
3. Check if temperature is too high.

■ Power on trip during charging

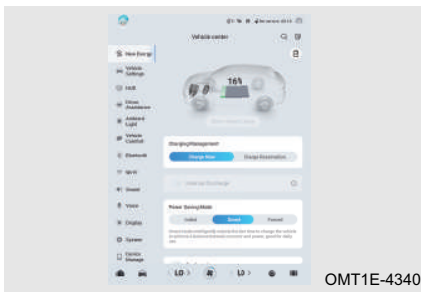
1. Check if it is grounded well.
2. Check if device is short circuit.
3. Check if total power of all electric equipment is too high.

■ Malfunction occurs each time power on when charging

Unplug three-pin plug and charging gun, then insert and unplug them again. If malfunction still occurs, please go to authorized service station immediately.

Charging Method

Charging management



With vehicle in READY state, Charging Management (Charge Now/Charge Reservation) and Slow Charger Unlock can be set in New Energy screen according to your needs.

Charge Now: Plug in charging gun to charge immediately.

Charge Reservation: Plug in charging gun before leaving the vehicle, set the start time and charging time, then charging can be started when appointed time is reached.

Slow Charger Unlock: Click to unlock the AC charging gun and stop charging.

READ

Charge Reservation is only suitable for AC charging, including portable AC charging devices and private charging piles, and needs to be realized with the charging gun connected. The charging piles that use card swiping or code scanning are not available.

Inspection before charging

■ If any of the following conditions occur, charging is prohibited, otherwise it may cause short circuit or electric shock, resulting in personal injury.

1. When the connection of discharging device is loose, do not perform charging.
2. Make sure that there is no water or foreign matter in the charging port, and the metal terminals are not rusted or corroded.
3. Make sure that the charging device is free from shell breakage, cable wear, rusty plug and other abnormal conditions.

READ

- The vehicle cannot be charged while the software is being upgraded.
- The vehicle must be in a parked state before charging.
- Do not forcibly open the charging port cover if it is not unlocked.
- Please carefully read and follow the usage instructions and precautions related to the charging device.
- If vehicle is charged in a high or low temperature environment, charging power will be reduced and charging time will be prolonged.
- Both AC and DC charging can be performed in any power mode. However, for safety, it is recommended to turn off the vehicle before charging.
- When the temperature of power battery is low, it may not charge at full power during the initial stages of charging. As the battery temperature increases during charging, the charging power will increase.

AC slow charging

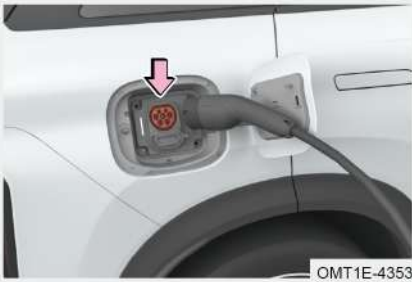


Step 1: Park vehicle in charging area, shift the shift lever to P, and apply the parking brake;

Step 2: Select Charge Now in New Energy screen to switch vehicle to power off state;

Step 3: Push center rear of the charging port cover to open it;

5. DRIVING ASSIST



Step 4: Open the back door and take out the charging device, then insert the three-pin plug into a standard power socket (only using on-board charging gun is applicable to this step). If AC charging pile is used for charging, please skip to step 5 directly;

Step 5: Unplug dust covers of charging port and charging gun, and insert charging gun into charging port until a slight sound is heard;

Step 6: After charging is completed, press the unlock button for vehicle, and unplug the charging gun from charging port;

Step 7: Close dust covers of charging port and charging gun, and close charging port cover.

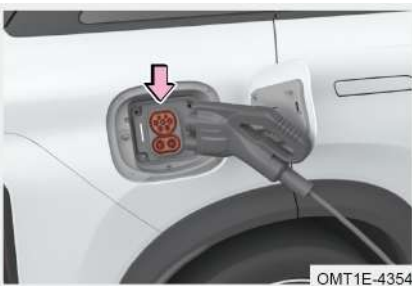
DC fast charging



Step 1: Park vehicle in charging area, shift the shift lever to P, and apply the parking brake;

Step 2: Select Charge Now in New Energy screen to switch vehicle to power off state;

Step 3: Push center rear of the charging port cover to open it;

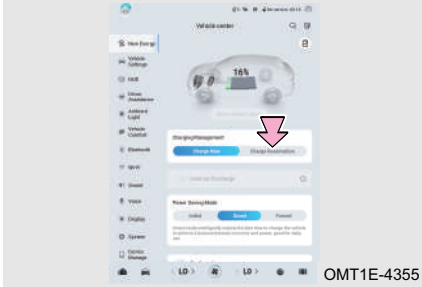


Step 4: Remove special charging gun from charging pile, unplug dust cover of charging port, and insert charging gun into charging port until a slight sound is heard;

Step 5: After charging is completed, press the unlock button for vehicle, and unplug the charging gun from charging port;

Step 6: Close dust covers of charging port and charging gun, and close charging port cover.

Charge reservation

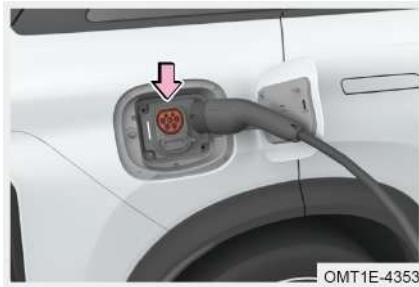


OMT1E-4355

Step 1: Park vehicle in charging area, shift the shift lever to P, and apply the parking brake;

Step 2: Select Charge Reservation from New Energy screen and set the start time and charging time, then switch vehicle to power off state;

Step 3: Push center rear of the charging port cover to open it;



OMT1E-4353

Step 4: Unplug dust covers of AC charging port and charging gun, and insert charging gun into charging port until a slight sound is heard. After the appointed time is reached, charging will be started;

Step 5: After charging is completed, press and hold the upper button on charging gun to unplug the charging gun from charging port;

Step 6: Close dust covers of charging port and charging gun, and close charging port cover.

Charging indicator



OMT1E-4356

- Waiting for charging: Indicator remains on in yellow, indicating that charger is connected, there is no charging current output.
- Charging: Indicator blinks in green, indicating that it is charging.
- Charging end: Indicator remains on in green, indicating that charging is completed and charging gun is not pulled.
- Charging malfunction: Indicator remains on in red, indicating that malfunction occurs.
- Waiting for discharging/discharging end: Indicator remains on in blue, indicating that discharging gun is connected, and it is waiting for discharging.
- Discharging: Indicator blinks in blue, indicating that it is discharging.

5. DRIVING ASSIST

- Lighting: Indicator remains on in white, indicating that charging gun is not connected, charging port box cover is open when the network is awake, indicator comes on for 30 seconds when ambient light collects a signal that ambient light is dark.

AC charging socket electronic lock

The vehicle AC charging socket is equipped with an electronic lock function, which prevents the charging gun from being plugged in and pulled out with electricity, and avoids charging safety problems.

■ Locking of electronic lock

Use 32A AC charging pile that meets the national standard for charging. After the charging gun is inserted in place and after the electronic lock is automatically locked, the vehicle will start charging.

WARNING

After the electronic lock is locked, if you need to remove the charging gun, please unlock the electronic lock before pulling out the gun; Do not pull the gun forcibly, so as not to damage the electronic lock or charging gun and other charging equipment.

■ Unlocking of electronic lock

Normal electronic lock unlocking is divided into the following two ways:

1. Press the lock button on smart key first, then press the unlock button on it to unlock the electronic lock, and gently press the mechanical lock button on the charging gun to pull out the charging gun.
2. Without using the smart key, hold the charging gun by your hand and press the button on the charging gun with your thumb. When you hear the electronic lock unlocking sound, first lift your thumb, and then quickly press the mechanical lock button on the charging gun again to pull out the charging gun.

READ

- If the charging gun is not pulled out after the electronic lock is unlocked, the electronic lock will be automatically relocked after several seconds.
- If the vehicle is in the unlocked state and the electronic lock is in the locked state, it is necessary to close the door and lock the vehicle before performing above electronic lock unlocking operation.

If the above unlocking method is invalid, emergency unlocking can be performed by cutting off the power supply of the charging device (for example, click stop charging on APP interface, turn off the power supply of the charging pile, press the emergency stop switch of charging pile).

Emergency Unlocking of Electronic Lock (Only for AC Charging)



When abnormal lock fault occurs in electronic lock of the charging gun or discharging gun, the charging gun and discharging gun can be manually unlocked with electronic lock cable.

Step 1: Make sure that the vehicle is not charged/discharged at present according to charging information displayed on instrument cluster;

Step 2: Open back door, lift the luggage compartment carpet and take out storage box;

Step 3: Pull the electronic lock cable to manually unlock the charging gun and discharging gun.

WARNING

- The electronic lock cable can only be used when charging gun or discharging gun cannot be unlocked from charging port by conventional methods. Continuous use may cause damage to electronic lock cable or charging device.
- Do not try to unlock charging gun while pulling electronic lock cable. Be sure to pull electronic lock cable before trying to unplug charging gun from charging port. Failure to do so may cause electric shock and serious injuries.
- Do not perform this operation when charging vehicle or any orange high voltage cable is exposed; Failure to do so may cause electric shock and serious injuries or vehicle damage; If you are not sure how to perform operation safely, please contact the authorized service station immediately.

Charging Precautions

Charging precautions on rainy days

1. When charging in rain, please take care to protect the charging device from water ingress.
2. It is strictly prohibited to charge outdoors in extreme weather conditions such as heavy rain, typhoons, hail, etc., that exceed national standards, as this may result in charging not being able to be carried out, and even cause damage to the vehicle or charging device.
3. When charging is required after a rain shower, please confirm whether there is water entering the charging port at first. Do not charge when there are

5. DRIVING ASSIST

obvious water stains in the charging port, as this may result in failure to charge, in severe cases, damage to the vehicle or charging device.

Precautions for end of charging

■ Manually stop charging

1. Stop charging at first, and ensure that the electronic lock is unlocked.
2. Hold the charging gun, and press and hold the button on charging gun to unplug it.
3. For AC charging, do not forcibly unplug the charging gun when electronic lock is locked, as this may damage the charging port.
4. For DC charging, never forcibly unplug the charging gun before stopping charging, as this may damage the charging port and pose a risk of electric shock.
5. After charging is completed, it is necessary to ensure that charging gun has been unplugged completely before starting vehicle, otherwise charging device and vehicle may be damaged.
6. After unplugging the charging gun, please ensure that the charging port protective cover and charging port cover are in closed condition, so as to prevent water or foreign objects from entering the charging port and affecting the normal use.

■ Automatically stop charging

1. After charging is completed, please unlock first, and then unplug the charging plug.
2. After charging is completed, it is necessary to ensure that charging gun has been unplugged completely before starting vehicle, otherwise charging device and vehicle may be damaged.
3. After unplugging the charging gun, please ensure that the charging port protective cover and charging port cover are in closed condition, so as to prevent water or foreign objects from entering the charging port and affecting the normal use.

The charging performance of vehicle is affected when the battery temperature is too low or too high

1. If the charging port cover or charging gun is frozen due to weather or other reasons, do not open the charging port cover or unplug the charging gun forcibly.
2. When charging at low temperature, the battery thermal management system will be in operation, but the charging time will be extended and the heating power consumption will increase, which is normal.
3. In northern regions with low temperature, it is recommended that users perform charging in a heated room.

4. In northern regions with low temperature, it is recommended that you charge immediately after using the vehicle, as the battery temperature will be relatively high at this time, resulting in better charging performance.
5. In southern regions with high temperature, it is recommended that users charge in a cool and ventilated place, and do not charge in direct sunlight or in air.

Safety Warning for Charging

1. Never use unqualified products.
2. Use special charging device for electric vehicles that meets relevant national standards.
3. Before driving, please ensure that the charging device is unplugged and the charging port cover is closed.
4. Do not modify, remove or repair the charging device and related ports to avoid charging malfunction and causing fire.
5. After an external charging of vehicle, the radiator fan and air conditioning compressor may automatically turn on and operate for battery cooling, which is normal.
6. It is strictly prohibited to operate with wet hands or touch the exposed metal of charging port or charging stand, as this may cause electric shock and personal injury.
7. Please charge in a relatively safe environment (e. g. avoid hazardous chemicals, fire sources, heat sources, lightning, flammable and explosive environments).
8. To avoid damaging the vehicle, do not shake the charging gun when charging, as this may damage the charging port of vehicle. During charging, do not perform repair on the vehicle.
9. It is forbidden for minors to perform charging operations or touch and use charging device. Charging gun is a high voltage electrical device. Do not let minors approach it when charging.
10. During charging, if vehicle or charging device is abnormal (e.g., odor, smoke, etc.), please stop charging immediately and contact the authorized service station.
11. If you want to use any medical device in vehicle (such as cardiovascular defibrillator implanted in the body), confirm with the manufacturer whether charging effects normal operation of the device before use, otherwise it may cause abnormal operation of device and series personal injuries.

5. DRIVING ASSIST

External Discharging Device

The external discharging function uses the new energy vehicle as a power supply. Through the external discharging device (220 V, 16 A) provided with vehicle, it can draw power and discharge externally, meeting the voltage requirements of general household appliances (220 V). It can be used for outdoor camping, barbecue, cooking, and other scenarios, satisfying your power needs outdoors.



With vehicle in READY state, turn External Discharge to ON/OFF on New Energy screen. Before unplugging the discharging gun, it is necessary to turn External Discharge to OFF.

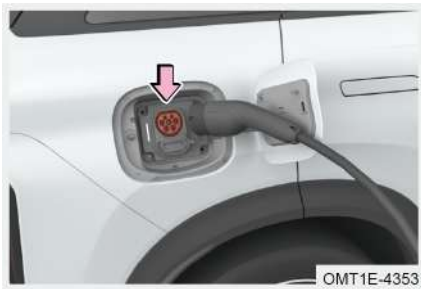
External Discharging Method

Inspection before external discharging

■ If any of the following conditions occur, external discharging operation is prohibited, otherwise it may cause short circuit or electric shock, resulting in personal injury.

1. External discharging operation is prohibited if the connection of the external discharging device is loose.
2. Make sure that there is no water or foreign matter in the AC charging port, and the metal terminals are not rusted or corroded.
3. Make sure that the external discharging device is free from shell breakage, cable wear, rusty plug and other abnormal conditions.

External discharging operation



Step 1: Park vehicle in a safe area, shift the shift lever to P, and apply the parking brake;

Step 2: Turn External Discharge to ON on New Energy screen, switch the power supply to any mode, disarm the vehicle while ensuring sufficient battery and fuel levels;

Step 3: Push center rear of the charging port cover to open it;

Step 4: Unplug dust covers of AC charging port and discharging gun, and insert discharging gun into AC charging port until a slight sound is heard;

Step 5: Press the switch button on power strip and wait for red indicator to remain on, which indicates that the external discharging device is successfully connected; after the external discharging device is successfully connected, the vehicle starts to discharge, and the vehicle displays the discharge information;

Step 6: After external discharging is completed, disconnect the external electrical appliance; after vehicle switches to READY, turn External Discharge to OFF on New Energy screen; press and hold the upper button of the discharging gun to unplug the discharging gun from AC charging port.

5. DRIVING ASSIST

Discharging indicator



The indicator light strip is located inside the charging port cover.

Remains on in white: Under dim light conditions, charging port cover is open, and no discharging gun is inserted.

Remains on in red: Fault indication.

Flashes in blue: It is being discharged.

Remains on in blue: Waiting for discharge.

READ

- When inserting DC charging gun, the external discharging function is not available.
- Before external discharging, please make sure that battery and fuel are sufficient, otherwise the external discharging function may not operate properly.
- During external discharging, the cumulative power of the external electrical appliances cannot exceed 3.3 kW, otherwise the external discharging function will stop operating.
- Turn the vehicle power to ON mode, if power battery is low during external discharging, the engine will automatically start to charge the power battery, which is a normal phenomenon.
- When vehicle is powered off and connected to external electrical appliances without output for a long time, the static power consumption of vehicle will increase. It is recommended that you unplug the discharging gun when not using the external electrical appliances.

⚠ WARNING

- Store external discharging device in a cool and dry place when not using it.
- Avoid vehicle crushing, falling, and stepping on external discharging device on purpose when using.
- Never contact metal terminals of the vehicle charging port and power strip during discharging.
- Never fall the external discharging device or pull the cable directly to move the external discharging device. Handle it gently when moving it.
- During external discharging, never place external electrical appliances in luggage compartment, under the front of vehicle or near tire.
- During external discharging, if there are abnormal conditions (e.g., odor, smoke, etc.), please stop using the external discharging function immediately.
- Never use the external discharging device under any damage conditions such as disconnection, breakage, cable wear, loose connection, exposed metal surface, etc.

Discharging Precautions

1. Ensure that the standard plug matches the specification of the product's power strip before use.
2. Never contact metal terminals of the discharging power strip or vehicle charging port when discharging.
3. During use, never drag the wire forcibly to avoid tension or squeezing.
4. When gun head and socket are separated and not in use temporarily, they should be covered with protective covers or properly protected.
5. Do not use the power strip if its surface is damaged, rusty, broken, or the connection is loose.
6. If gun head is dirty or damp, please cut off the power supply first, and then use a dry and clean cloth to wipe the gun head, and ensure that the discharging gun head is clean.
7. Before use, please ensure that there are no abnormalities such as damage on the surface of discharging gun, cable, and discharging power strip in the discharging device.

5. DRIVING ASSIST

Safety Warning for Discharging

1. Never use unqualified products.
2. Use special charging device for electric vehicles that meets relevant national standards.
3. Before driving, please ensure that the discharging device is unplugged and the charging port cover is closed.
4. Do not modify, remove or repair the charging device and related ports to avoid charging malfunction and causing fire.
5. After an external discharging of vehicle, the radiator fan and air conditioning compressor may automatically turn on and operate for battery cooling, which is normal.
6. It is strictly prohibited to operate with wet hands or touch the exposed metal of charging port or charging stand, as this may cause electric shock and personal injury.
7. Please discharge in a relatively safe environment (e. g. avoid hazardous chemicals, fire sources, heat sources, lightning, flammable and explosive environments).
8. To avoid damaging the vehicle, do not shake the discharging gun when discharging, as this may damage the charging port of vehicle. During discharging, do not perform repair on the vehicle.
9. It is forbidden for minors to perform discharging operations or touch and use discharging device. Discharging gun is a high voltage electrical device. Do not let minors approach it when discharging.
10. During discharging, if vehicle or discharging device is abnormal (e.g., odor, smoke, etc.), please stop discharging immediately and contact the authorized service station.

5-20. Data Privacy

Chery Automobile Co., Ltd. (hereinafter referred to as "we" or "us") is the manufacturer responsible for privacy by design (PbD) of your vehicle.

Driver Drowsiness and Attention Warning (DDAW)

Our vehicle's Driver Drowsiness Alert Warning (DDAW) system works to detect signs of driver fatigue. It does this by monitoring a range of parameters within a recent time window, including the proportion of time your eyes are open, blink rate, direction of gaze, length of gaze, yawning, as well as vehicular parameters such as speed, gear position, car door status, steering wheel angle, and direction of turn. The system uses this information to make a comprehensive judgement about driver fatigue and issue alerts as necessary.

 CAUTION

Please be aware that the data collected by the DDAW system is required by regulations, collected for immediate processing, and is not stored. According to the regulations, DDAW will be enabled by default. The collected data is used for algorithmic recognition and discarded immediately after use. All data is processed within the vehicle and does not leave the vehicle.

Advanced Driver Assistance System (ADAS)

In order to implement the drive assistance function, the car side will use the vehicle's front, flanks, and rear cameras to collect image data on the road during driving or after parking, image data surrounding the vehicle to complete drive assistance function. The camera recordings use the vehicle's external cameras to learn how to recognize things like lane lines, street signs and parking signs and traffic light.

 CAUTION

Please be aware that the processing data within our system is designed for immediate use and analysis. We do not store any of the data that is processed. This data is necessary for legitimate interests and also to fulfil legal and other official requirements.

Emergency call (eCall)

In the event when you are in a traffic accident or you press the SOS button for roadside assistance, the eCall system on the in-vehicle terminal will provide your vehicle location, contact information and additional required information to the Public Safety Answering Point (PSAP) which is set up by government authority. The collection and sharing of these data comply with the requirements of laws and regulations, which only includes GPS, speed, directions of your vehicle, the time when you trigger the eCall, the eCall status, Vehicle Identification Number (VIN), vehicle model, power type and Recorded voice data.

 CAUTION

We collect this data to fulfil our legal obligations outlined in vehicle security regulations.

6-1. Emergency Call Function	Replacement) (If equipped)	241
ECALL (If Equipped).....	236	
6-2. Basic Knowledge of Vehicle Emergency	If Engine Coolant Temperature is High	246
Hazard Light.....	236	
Reflective Strip	237	
Warning Triangle.....	237	
Spare Tools (If Equipped)	238	
6-3. Vehicle Emergency Handling	6-4. Towing	
If You Have a Flat Tire (- Tire Repair Liquid).....	Towing Vehicle.....	250
239	Installing Towing Eyelet.....	251
If You Have a Flat Tire While Driving (Tire	Emergency Towing	252
6-5. Fuse		
Fuse Box	253	
Checking Fuse.....	254	
Replacing Fuse.....	254	

6. IN CASE OF AN EMERGENCY

6-1. Emergency Call Function

ECALL (If Equipped)



Manual activation: When required to report a serious accident, or require emergency help, long press the SOS button for 2 seconds.

Automatic activation: In case of an accident, which requires airbags to be activated, the vehicle will automatically contact emergency services and communicate standard information to a Public Safety Answering Point (PSAP).

READ

- Information communicated to the PSAP includes: vehicle type, number of seated passengers detected in the vehicle, GPS coordinates, and the VIN.
- Emergency call services are not available in all countries or regions.
- Emergency call only operates over a mobile network with an adequate signal.

6-2. Basic Knowledge of Vehicle Emergency

Hazard Light



In case of vehicle failure or traffic accident etc., please turn on the hazard lights to warn other vehicles, so as to avoid the secondary accident.

Press hazard light switch, turn signal lights flash and the turn signal indicator on instrument cluster flashes at the same time; Press the switch again, turn signal lights and turn signal indicator will go out.

 READ

- The hazard lights can still work when the vehicle power is turned to OFF mode.
- The hazard lights are automatically activated when the airbag is operating.
- The hazard lights will work when vehicle speed is 50km/h or higher and ABS enters full cycle.

 CAUTION

To prevent battery from being depleted, do not turn on the hazard lights more than necessary when the engine is not started.

Emergency braking alarm function

When brake pedal is depressed in emergency at higher speed, the lights and turn signal indicator on instrument cluster flash quickly; Release the brake pedal, press the hazard light switch or turn the vehicle power to OFF mode, the turn signal lights and turn signal indicator on instrument cluster will stop flashing.

Reflective Strip

The reflective strip is placed into the glove box.

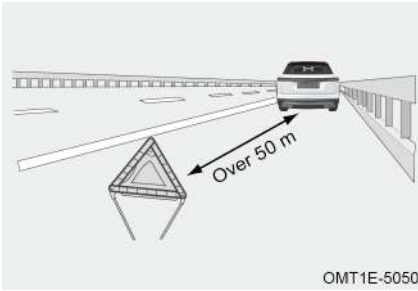
In case of vehicle failure or traffic accident etc., wear the reflective strip with reflective strip facing outwards. It can warn other vehicles to avoid secondary accidents.

Warning Triangle

Warning triangle is located on the back door panel, turn the retaining clamp counterclockwise to remove it.

In case of vehicle failure or traffic accident etc., the reflective performance of warning triangle can warn other vehicles to avoid secondary accidents.

6. IN CASE OF AN EMERGENCY



Place the warning triangle at a distance of more than 50 m behind the vehicle on a normal road.

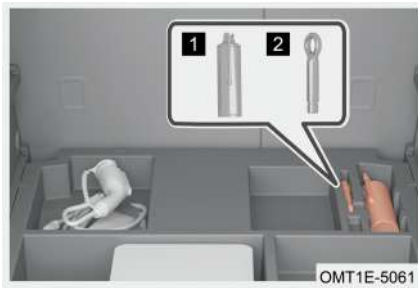
Place the warning triangle at a distance of more than 150 m behind the vehicle on the highway.

Place the warning triangle at a distance of over 150 m behind the vehicle in rain or when steering.

Spare Tools (If Equipped)



- 1 Jack
- 2 Wheel bolt wrench
- 3 Towing eyelet (if equipped)
- 4 Jack rocker



- 1 Automatic inflation tire repair liquid
- 2 Towing eyelet

READ

Some models are equipped with tire pressure gauge, fire extinguisher and first-aid packet.

6-3. Vehicle Emergency Handling

If You Have a Flat Tire (Tire Repair Liquid)

If a tire goes flat during driving, slow down gradually, grip the steering wheel with two hands and keep driving straightly. Stop vehicle to a safe place away from the traffic road.

1. Preparations before using automatic inflation tire repair liquid.

Step 1: Stop vehicles on solid, level ground;

Step 2: Apply the parking brake and shift the shift lever to P;

Step 3: Turn vehicle power to OFF mode, and turn on hazard lights;

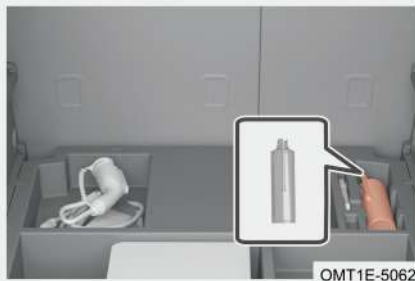
Step 4: Have everyone get out of vehicle, pull over and stay away from traffic;

Step 5: Wear reflective vest, and place the warning triangle at a distance of 50 m - 150 m behind the vehicle (depending on actual condition).

 CAUTION

Do not continue driving with a flat tire. Driving even a short distance with a flat tire can damage the tire beyond repair.

2. Use the automatic inflation tire repair liquid.

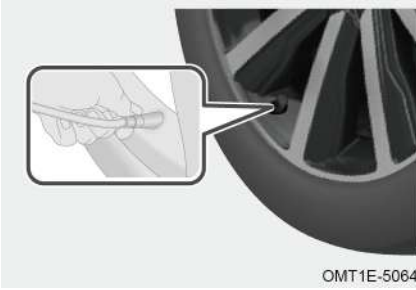


Step 1: Open back door, lift the luggage compartment carpet and take out the automatic inflation tire repair liquid;

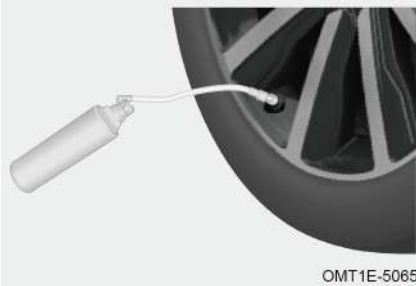


Step 2: Shake the automatic tire filler well before use, and then tear off the safety belt of the junction valve;

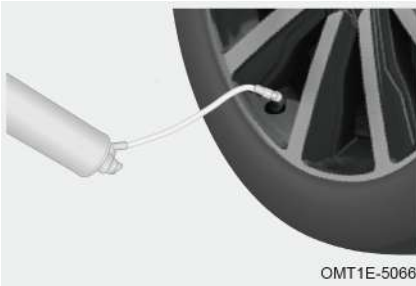
6. IN CASE OF AN EMERGENCY



Step 3: Tighten the junction valve of the automatic inflation tire repair liquid to the tire valve;



Step 4: Turn the red valve clockwise and place the bottle upside down to start inflating the tire;



Step 5: After the automatic inflation tire repair liquid is filled, close the valve counterclockwise and screw out the junction valve. Then immediately drive for 10 km or more to complete the repair. Please go to authorized service station or professional tire repair shop for repair and replace as soon as possible.

Note: After using the automatic inflation tire repair liquid, it supports the vehicle to drive continuously for 500 km or more. For the first 10 km, please drive at the speed of < 80 km/h. After 10 km, drive the vehicle at normal speed. It is recommended that you go to authorized service station or professional tire repair shop for repair and replace as soon as possible.

READ

- Before using the automatic inflation tire repair liquid, please check the validity period indicated on the automatic inflation tire repair liquid tank to ensure that it is used within the validity period.
- The automatic inflation tire repair liquid (750 ml) is a disposable consumable (for one wheel only), you can go to authorized service station for purchase.

⚠ WARNING

- Avoid the automatic inflation tire repair liquid contacting with the skin or eyes and keep it out of the reach of children.
- If you continue to drive the vehicle in the case of tire puncture and air leakage, it is easy to have tire blowout, endangering personal safety.
- The automatic inflation tire repair liquid is used for repairing tread puncture repair, other parts such as shoulder, sidewall and valve nozzle damage are not in the scope of repair.
- When it is required to pull out the puncture object before repairing, make sure to move the vehicle slightly so that the puncture hole is facing downward at 6 o'clock position before filling the tire with automatic inflation tire repair liquid.
- If the automatic inflation tire repair liquid splashes onto the tire or rim during use, wash it with clean water or wipe it with cloth; if the liquid accidentally gets into your eyes, please wash with clean water and seek medical attention immediately.
- When the product is used in (-40 ° C - 0 ° C) ambient temperature, please warm up the product to 0 ° C or more at the heater in the vehicle to increase the filling efficiency of the automatic inflation tire repair liquid.
- It is effective to repair the puncture diameter of $\leq 6\text{mm}$, within which the puncture object can be pulled out for repair; when the puncture diameter is $> 6\text{mm}$, please contact authorized service station immediately.
- After using the automatic inflation tire repair liquid, immediately drive the vehicle for 10 km or more. Never stop and stay. Please go to authorized service station or professional tire repair shop for repair and replace as soon as possible.
- The storage temperature of automatic inflation tire repair liquid is -40 ° C - 70 ° C. It is forbidden to store in the vehicle under direct sunlight; and it is forbidden to contact with open fire; please be sure to store it in the tool box securely according to the requirements, do not put it in the cabin.

If You Have a Flat Tire While Driving (Tire Replacement) (If equipped)

If a tire goes flat during driving, slow down gradually, grip the steering wheel with two hands and keep driving straightly. Stop vehicle to a safe place away from the traffic road.

1. Preparations before replacing flat tire.

Step 1: Stop vehicles on solid, level ground;

Step 2: Apply parking brake and shift the shift lever to P;

Step 3: Turn vehicle power to OFF mode, and turn on hazard lights;

Step 4: Have everyone get out of vehicle, pull over and stay away from traffic;

6. IN CASE OF AN EMERGENCY

Step 5: Wear reflective strip, and place the warning triangle 50 m - 150 m behind the vehicle (depending on actual condition).

⚠ CAUTION

Do not continue driving with a flat tire. Driving even a short distance can damage the tire beyond repair.

📖 READ

The vehicle is equipped with full size spare tire or non-full size spare tire, the replacement method for both tires is the same.

2. Take out the spare tire.



Step 1: Open back door, remove the luggage compartment carpet;



Step 2: Rotate fixing device of spare tire counterclockwise to remove it, and then take out spare tire.

3. Remove the flat tire.



Step 1: Put a block under the tire diagonally opposite to flat tire to prevent vehicle from rolling.

Flat Tire	Wheel Block Position
Front left wheel	Behind rear right wheel
Front right wheel	Behind rear left wheel
Rear left wheel	Behind front right wheel
Rear right wheel	Behind front left wheel

6. IN CASE OF AN EMERGENCY



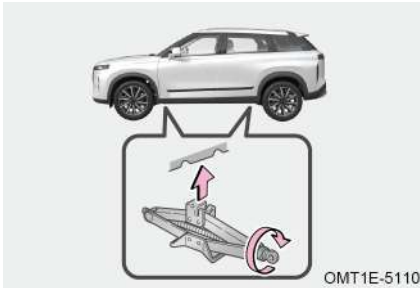
Step 2: Fit wheel bolt wrench to wheel bolt of flat tire, set the handle on left side, hold the end of wrench handle and push it downward, loosen each bolt of flat tire about one-half turn;

⚠ CAUTION

When removing wheel bolts with the wrench, be careful not to drop them as they can be damaged easily.

⚠ WARNING

Do not loosen the bolts completely. Otherwise, wheel may be ejected out because of the vehicle pressure, causing personal injury.



Step 3: Place jack on firm and level ground, turn jack handle clockwise by hand, making the notch of jack contact with the correct jacking-up point.

📖 READ

Jack the vehicle to a proper height at which tire can be replaced.

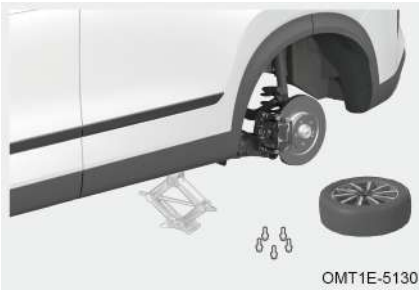
⚠ WARNING

Never put any part of body under the vehicle when vehicle is jacked up to avoid personal injury.



Step 4: When the notch of jack contacts correct jacking-up point, fit jack rocker into jack, and then fit wheel bolt wrench into jack rocker, and turn the wheel bolt wrench clockwise to jack up the vehicle;

6. IN CASE OF AN EMERGENCY

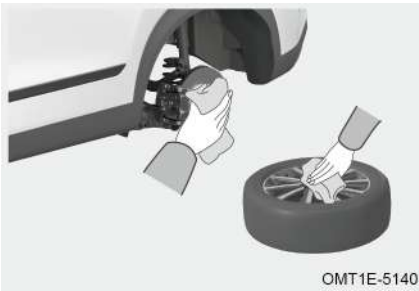


Step 5: Remove the wheel bolts of flat tire counterclockwise with the wheel bolt wrench, and remove the flat tire.

⚠ CAUTION

Place the flat tire on ground with rim facing upward, so as to avoid scratching the rim surface.

4. Install the spare tire.



Step 1: Remove any attachments from mounting surface. Make sure wheel hub well contacts with wheel surface, and install spare tire;



Step 2: When installing wheel bolts, screw into all wheel bolts clockwise by hand. Then straighten the spare tire, and pretighten all wheel bolts with wheel bolt wrench;

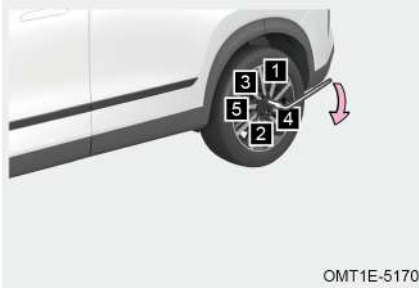
⚠ CAUTION

Do not apply oil or grease on wheel bolts.



Step 3: Make sure all persons around the vehicle stay in the safe area, fit jack rocker into jack, and wheel bolt wrench into jack rocker, and turn wheel bolt wrench counterclockwise to lower the vehicle;

6. IN CASE OF AN EMERGENCY



Step 4: Using wheel bolt wrench, tighten bolts in sequence shown in illustration. Repeat the process 2 to 3 times to ensure that wheel bolts are tightened in place;

Step 5: Stow the flat tire and place jack, warning triangle and spare tools in original place;

Step 6: If the pressure of spare tire is insufficient, drive vehicle slowly to the nearest authorized service station to inflate the tire to correct pressure.

WARNING

- Drive at specified speed of 80 km/h or less with a non-full size spare tire, it is not designed for driving at high speeds. Failure to observe this precaution may lead to an accident causing death or serious injury.
- Tighten wheel bolts to $150 \pm 12 \text{ N}\cdot\text{m}$ (M12)/ $180 \pm 18 \text{ N}\cdot\text{m}$ (M14) after replacing the non-full size spare wheel. Drive slowly to the nearest authorized service station (advised distance: $\leq 80 \text{ km}$) to replace with a standard tire. Otherwise, the wheels may fall off due to loose bolts.
- The vehicle becomes lower when driving with non-full-size spare tire compared to when driving with standard tires. Be careful when driving over uneven road surfaces.
- Spare tire is designed only for emergency use and should be used only for very short periods. It should never be used for long drives or extended periods.
- Remember that the non-full-size spare tire provided is specifically designed for use with your vehicle. Do not use your spare tire on another vehicle.
- Do not use more than one non-full-size spare tires simultaneously.
- Replace the spare tire with a standard tire as soon as possible.
- Avoid sudden acceleration, abrupt steering, sudden braking and shifting operations that cause sudden engine braking.

6. IN CASE OF AN EMERGENCY

If Engine Coolant Temperature is High

If the engine coolant temperature is high during driving, and engine coolant temperature gauge approaching H area or red indicator "🔥" on instrument cluster comes on, please stop vehicle to a safe place away from the traffic road.



Step 1: Stop vehicle on solid, level ground;

Step 2: Apply parking brake and shift the shift lever to P;

Step 3: Turn off A/C system (Water dripping from air conditioning after use is normal);

Step 4: Turn vehicle power to OFF mode after idling for several minutes, and turn on hazard lights;

Step 5: Before opening the hood, check whether there is steam or coolant overflow or leakage. Only open the hood when there is no steam or coolant overflow or leakage, otherwise, burns may occur;

Step 6: Check the coolant level. If it is normal, it may be caused by the failure of radiator fan. Please contact authorized service station for inspection and repair immediately;

Step 7: Check the coolant level. If it is low, please contact authorized service station for inspection and repair immediately.

READ

If the coolant level is low, water can be used temporarily, please go to authorized service station to replace coolant as soon as possible.

CAUTION

If engine overheats frequently, please contact the authorized service station for inspection and repair immediately.

If Battery is Flat

Jump-starting

Turn vehicle power to OFF mode for a few minutes, then turn vehicle power to ON mode to see if it can enter READY state; after attempting for several times, if it is still cannot be resolved, turn vehicle power to OFF mode to check if the battery terminals are tightened and cleaned, or turn vehicle power to ON mode to check if the headlights are dim than the normal state, the horn does not sound or sound weakly, which indicate the battery is discharged.

6. IN CASE OF AN EMERGENCY

Turn the vehicle power to ON mode after trying jump-starting to check if it can enter Ready state; after jump-starting, if it is still cannot be resolved, please go to authorized service station immediately.



Step 1: Turn vehicle power to OFF mode, and connect jumper cables;

Connect one end of positive cable to positive terminal (+) of battery on discharged vehicle, and the other end to the positive terminal (+) of battery on rescue vehicle.

Connect one end of negative cable to negative terminal (-) of battery on rescue vehicle, and the other end to unpainted metal part on discharged vehicle.

Step 2: Start the engine of rescue vehicle, slightly increase engine speed and maintain for approximately 5 minutes to temporarily charge the battery on discharged vehicle;

Step 3: If the discharged vehicle is still unable to start, check whether the jumper cable is connected normally, and then charge the battery;

Step 4: Once the engine is started on discharged vehicle, remove jumper cables in the reverse order of connection (negative cable first and then the positive cable).

CAUTION

- If the battery is lack of power frequently, please go to authorized service station for inspection and repair as soon as possible.
- The negative terminal of battery on rescue vehicle should not be directly connected to negative terminal of battery on discharged vehicle.
- Do not jump start unless you are sure that the battery voltage for jump starting is 12 - 13 V.
- When connecting and removing jumper cables, ensure that they do not become entangled in fan, belt, etc.
- Ensure that the jumper cables are properly connected and keep a certain distance between terminals, to prevent the jumper cables from touching each other or touching other metal parts of the vehicle.
- Before turning off vehicle power or locking the vehicle, make sure that the electrical appliances of vehicle are turned off, to prevent the vehicle from being unable to start normally due to battery power loss.

6. IN CASE OF AN EMERGENCY

WARNING

- The specified jumper cables should be used.
- Do not smoke, use matches, cigarette lighters or allow open flame near the battery.
- If you are unsure about how to follow the procedure, we strongly recommends that you seek help from professional serviceman or at a authorized service station.

Replacing battery



Step 1: Click " $\frac{4}{10}$ OFF " button in the control center to switch the vehicle to the power-off state;

Step 2: Open the back door, fold back luggage compartment carpet and take out the storage box, disconnect the negative battery (12 V) cable;

Step 3: Remove the negative (-) battery terminal cable;

Step 4: Remove the positive (+) battery terminal cable;

Step 5: Remove the battery holder and the battery;

Step 6: Install a new battery that has the same specification as the used one;

Step 7: Install the new battery properly in the reverse order of removing.

Note: Your vehicle is equipped with maintenance free battery. The new battery should have the same specifications with the genuine one during replacement. We recommend that you should go to authorized service station for battery replacement.

ENVIRONMENTAL PROTECTION

Battery contains acid which is poisonous and corrosive. Please deal with it according to the local regulations and provisions regarding environmental protection.

CAUTION

While removing battery, be careful to avoid the metal tool contacting with both battery terminals or touching the positive (+) battery terminals and body at the same time.

⚠ WARNING

- Do not leave battery within the reach of children.
- Do not smoke, use matches, cigarette lighters or allow open flame near the battery.
- Always wear gloves and safety glasses during operation, as battery contains acid which is poisonous and corrosive. Do not lean on the battery.
- If acid spills on your skin or clothes, the liquid must be neutralized with alkaline water (such as: soap) immediately, and then wash it with clean water. Get emergency medical attention immediately if necessary.

If Your Vehicle Cannot Start Normally

If your vehicle cannot start normally, first make sure you have followed the correct starting procedures and check if fuel is sufficient.

■ Starter speed is too low, but vehicle cannot start normally

Step 1: Check if battery terminals are tight and clean;

Step 2: Turn on headlights. If the light is dim, it indicates that the battery is discharged. Please try jump starting;

Step 3: Try to start engine again, if it still cannot start normally, the starting system may be malfunctioning. Please contact authorized service station for inspection and repair immediately.

■ Starter speed is normal, but vehicle cannot start normally

Step 1: Turn vehicle power to OFF or ACC mode, try to start the engine again;

Step 2: If the engine still cannot be started normally, it may cause excessive fuel in cylinder due to repeat starting. Turn vehicle power to OFF mode, try to start engine again after a few minutes;

Step 3: Try to start engine again, if it still cannot start normally, please contact authorized service station for inspection and repair immediately.

⚠ CAUTION

- To avoid damage to the starter, starting operation should not exceed 15 seconds each time.
- If vehicle becomes difficult to start or stalls frequently, please go to authorized service station for inspection and repair as soon as possible.

6. IN CASE OF AN EMERGENCY

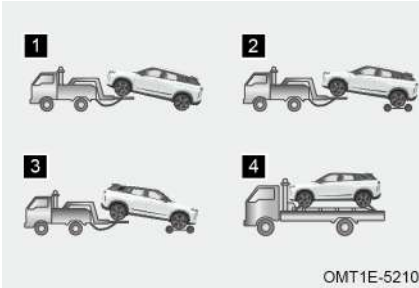
6-4. Towing

Towing Vehicle

Towing must comply with local laws about towing.

Before towing the vehicle, release parking brake (for emergency releasing electric parking, refer to "Brake System"), and shift the shift lever to N.

Correct towing methods



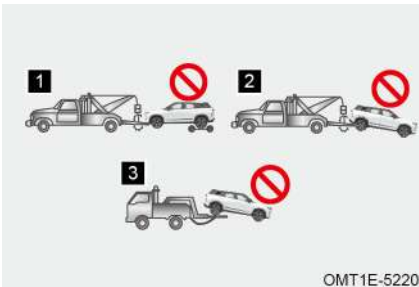
- 1** For front-wheel drive vehicles:
Tow with a wheel lift-type truck from front, and secure the vehicle firmly.
- 2** For front-wheel drive, rear-wheel drive and 4WD vehicles: When towing with a wheel lift-type truck from front, use a towing dolly under the rear wheels, and secure the vehicle firmly.

- 3** For front-wheel drive, rear-wheel drive and 4WD vehicles: When towing with a wheel lift-type truck from behind, use a towing dolly under the front wheels, and secure the vehicle firmly.
- 4** For front-wheel drive, rear-wheel drive and 4WD vehicles: When towing with a flatbed truck, secure the vehicle firmly.

⚠ CAUTION

- It is recommended to use flatbed truck for 4WD vehicles.
- Use a flatbed truck if the vehicle's wheels or axle are damaged.
- Ensure that there is a proper clearance between the wheels not lifted and ground. Otherwise, the bumper and chassis of towed vehicle will be damaged during towing.

Wrong towing methods



- 1** Tow with sling-type truck sling from front of the vehicle
- 2** Tow with sling-type truck sling from rear of the vehicle whilst front wheels are on the ground
- 3** Tow with wheel lift-type truck sling from rear of the vehicle whilst front wheels are on the ground

⚠ CAUTION

Do not tow with a sling-type truck to prevent body damage.

Installing Towing Eyelet**Front towing eyelet**

Step 1: Use a screwdriver with its tip taped to remove the front towing eyelet hole cover;

Step 2: Install towing eyelet into eyelet hole in a clockwise direction. Then tighten it firmly with wheel bolt wrench.

Rear towing eyelet

Step 1: Use a screwdriver with its tip taped to remove the rear towing eyelet hole cover.

Step 2: Install towing eyelet into eyelet hole in a clockwise direction. Then tighten it firmly with wheel bolt wrench.

⚠ CAUTION

- Only use specified towing eyelet. Otherwise, vehicle may be damaged.
- Towing rope or towing bar can be installed only when towing eyelet is installed in place.
- Drive the vehicle slowly and smoothly when towing. Impact due to excessive tension may damage the vehicle.

⚠ WARNING

Make sure that towing eyelet is installed securely. Otherwise, the towing eyelet may come loose when towing, which may cause an accident, resulting in death or serious injury.

6. IN CASE OF AN EMERGENCY

Emergency Towing

If flatbed truck is not available during towing, your vehicle may be temporarily towed using a towing hook. This should only be attempted on hard surfaced road for short distances at low speed.

When using towing hook, driver must seat in towed vehicle to operate steering wheel and brake pedal, and vehicle wheels, drive train, axle, steering system and braking system must be in good condition.

Before emergency towing, release parking brake (for details of emergency releasing electric parking, refer to "Brake System"), shift the shift lever to N, and turn vehicle power to ACC or ON mode.

CAUTION

- Do not perform emergency towing for long periods of time.
- Secure a towing cable, chain or lever to the vehicle towing eyelet.
- Never tow a vehicle heavier than this vehicle, otherwise the vehicle may be damaged.
- Both drivers must be familiar with the towing process, otherwise they cannot carry out towing work.
- Tow vehicle as straightly ahead as possible, do not tow vehicle from side to avoid damaging vehicle.
- If engine is not started, assist system will not work, therefore, braking and steering will be more difficult than usual. So, please operate carefully.
- We strongly recommends that you seek help from professional serviceman or authorized service station.
- If towed vehicle still cannot move, do not forcibly continue towing to avoid secondary damage to vehicle. We strongly recommends that you seek help from professional serviceman or authorized service station.

WARNING

- To avoid personal injury, people other than driver should stay away from the vehicle when it is towed.
- When towing vehicle, avoid sudden start-off or erratic driving maneuvers which would apply excessive force on the towing eyelet, cable, chain or lever. The towing eyelet, cable, chain or lever may break and cause vehicle damage or serious personal injury.

6-5. Fuse

Fuse Box

Fuses are used to protect electrical components and circuits to avoid short circuit or overload. If fuse is blown, the protected components and systems will not work properly.

Front compartment fuse box



Step 1: Click "OFF" button in the control center to switch the vehicle to the power-off state;

Step 2: Open the back door, fold back luggage compartment carpet and take out the storage box, disconnect the negative battery (12 V) cable;



Step 3: Remove the engine compartment fuse box cover to check or replace the fuse.

Instrument panel fuse box



Step 1: Click "OFF" button in the control center to switch the vehicle to the power-off state;

Step 2: Open the back door, fold back luggage compartment carpet and take out the storage box, disconnect the negative battery (12 V) cable;

6. IN CASE OF AN EMERGENCY

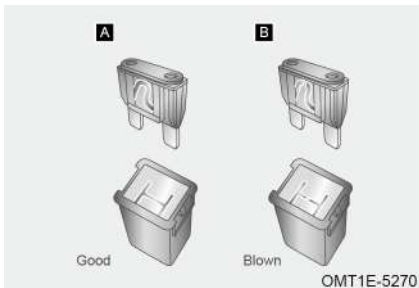


Step 3: Remove instrument panel lower left protector to inspect or replace fuse.

READ

- Check suspected fuses according to the fuse and relay box layout.
- To prevent damage to the vehicle, be careful when removing/installing the instrument panel lower left protector. Please contact authorized service station as necessary.
- The fuse box must be clean, keep it away from dampness when opening, as dirt and moisture may damage the electrical system.

Checking Fuse



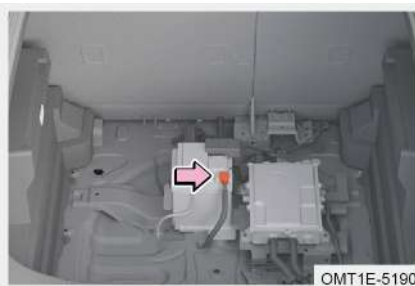
A Good fuse.

B Blown fuse.

READ

If the fuses are blown, they must be replaced.

Replacing Fuse



Step 1: Click "OFF" button in the control center to switch the vehicle to the power-off state;

Step 2: Open the back door, fold back luggage compartment carpet and take out the storage box, disconnect the negative battery (12 V) cable;



Step 3: Check the fuse according to fuse and relay location distribution diagram, use the puller to remove the possible faulted fuse;

Step 4: Check if the fuse is blown. If you cannot determine if the fuse is blown, replace it with a spare fuse of same ampere value. The rated ampere value can be seen on the schematic diagram inside the fuse box cover.

READ

If a spare fuse is unavailable, you can use a fuse with same specification from other unimportant electrical appliances in an emergency. It is better to purchase a set of spare fuses and put them in vehicle for emergency use.

CAUTION

- Do not modify any fuses or fuse boxes.
- Only install a fuse that has the same amperage rating as used one. Never replace a fuse with a wire, even as a temporary replacement. Otherwise, this may cause serious damage to electrical appliances, or even fire.

7-1. Repair and Maintenance

Repair and Maintenance ... 258

Authorized Service

Station is at Your

Service 258

Reading Vehicle

Identification Code

Information 259

Safety Check 259

7-2. Normal Maintenance

Normal Maintenance 260

Checking Oil Level 261

Checking Transmission

Fluid Level 262

Checking Brake Fluid

Level 262

Checking Coolant Level 263

Checking Radiator and

Condenser 264

Checking Drive Belt 265

Checking Tires 265

Tire Rotation 267

Checking Battery 267

Checking Air

Conditioning Filter 268

Checking Windshield

Washer Fluid 268

Checking Wiper Blades 269

7-3. Regular Maintenance

First Maintenance

Information 270

Maintenance Schedule 271

Technical Data 279

7. MAINTENANCE

7-1. Repair and Maintenance

Repair and Maintenance

There are two types of repair and maintenance: one is normal maintenance, which can be done by the customers; the other is scheduled maintenance, inspection and repair, which needs to be completed by authorized service station.

For the details of regular maintenance, inspection and repair methods, please refer to "Regular Maintenance" in this section; Regular maintenance can be helpful for you to find and eliminate potential dangers in time to prevent malfunctions. Scheduled maintenance of your vehicle is essential. Please strictly follow the maintenance schedule of "User Manual" to perform maintenance, ensuring that your vehicle maintains the best performance and good operating conditions, thus effectively extending the service life of the vehicle.

Please use the recommended fluid, or your vehicle may be damaged.

Authorized Service Station is at Your Service

Authorized service station

Only OEM parts and materials can extend your vehicle's service life. We only supplies OEM parts to authorized service station located worldwide. Therefore, only OEM parts from authorized service station can be used.

Authorized service station offers a professional service. For vehicle service, please remember that your authorized service station knows your vehicle best, and has the professional technicians and OEM parts to complete the job to the highest standard.



ENVIRONMENTAL PROTECTION

Used engine oil, brake fluid, coolant, steering fluid (if equipped), batteries and tires should only be disposed of by qualified waste disposal agencies or after consultation with manufacturers, and should not be taken out with household waste or disposed of into the communal drainage system.

Service arrangements

When go to authorized service station for vehicle service, make sure to carry all required documents. Not all the work to be performed is covered by the warranty. For detailed expenses, consult your service advisor. Keep a service record on your vehicle. Usually, this record can provide valuable reference information.

Prepare a list sheet covering vehicle malfunctions and specific service items. If you have had an accident or any item serviced is not included in the service records, let your service advisor know.

If you list many service items and you must fetch your vehicle on the day, communicate with your advisor to rank the items by priority.

Reading Vehicle Identification Code Information

The vehicle Identification code information can be readout by installing the malfunction diagnosis device, used for inspections and maintenance.

Do not install electrical components other than the diagnosis device to the connector. Doing so may cause unexpected problems to occur, such as having a bad effect on electronics or damaging the battery.

Safety Check

It is better to perform a safety check before driving vehicle, which will improve your driving safety and enjoyment.

WARNING

While inspecting vehicle, do not start the vehicle.

Daily check

Check whether paint surface is scratched, light shade is damaged, body is tilted, wheel bolts are missed or loosened, water/oil leakage of chassis occurs, door/hood/back door/glass is damaged.

Check that engine oil level, brake fluid level, coolant level, steering fluid level (if equipped) and windshield washer fluid level is normal.

Check cold tire pressure and conditions (such as: wear, swelling, aging cracks, mechanical damages, etc). Also check the spare tire.

Check whether seat belt buckles fasten securely. Make sure belts are not worn or frayed.

Check whether lighting of lights is normal.

Check whether meter indicators are normal.

Monthly check

Clean vehicle surface, inside of engine hood (dust on surface of radiator and condenser, and remaining oil of engine body), vehicle interior and luggage compartment.

Check assembly, pipes, hoses and tanks for leaks; Check whether battery and cable are corroded and loosened; Check whether circuits are damaged, loosened or disconnected; Check that no water/oil leakage has occurred.

Check whether air condition is operating properly.

7. MAINTENANCE

Check whether parking brake is operating properly.

Check whether spare fuses and spare tools (such as: jack, wheel bolt wrench, etc.) are equipped.

READ

Used engine oil, brake fluid, coolant, batteries and tires can be disposed only by qualified waste disposal agencies, or consult supporting manufacturers for disposal of them. It is not permitted to dispose of them with household waste or discharge them into public drainage system.

7-2. Normal Maintenance

Normal Maintenance

Be sure to follow the correct maintenance procedures provided in this section if you perform do-it-yourself maintenance.

This section only lists the simple maintenance instructions which can be performed by customers. However, there are still many items that have to be maintained by qualified technicians with special tools.

CAUTION

- Check for any tools or cloths that may have been left behind before closing the hood.
- Do not drive vehicle with the air filter removed, otherwise, excessive engine wear could occur.
- Correctly add fluid to the appropriate level. If some fluid splashes onto the vehicle, be sure to immediately wash it off with a wet cloth, to avoid damage to the painted surface.

WARNING

- If the engine is very hot, do not open the coolant reservoir cap to prevent scalding injury.
- When the engine is running, keep hands, clothing and tools away from engine drive belts and cooling fan.
- Do not smoke near fuel filler or battery, otherwise, it may cause sparks or open flames, resulting in a fire.
- There is a high voltage in the electronic ignition system. Do not touch these components while the engine is running or the vehicle power is turned on.
- Right after driving, engine, radiator, exhaust manifold and cylinder head will be very hot, so never touch them. Prevent any loose clothing from getting caught in the fan and causing personal injury because the cooling fan may automatically start and run at any time.

Checking Oil Level

Checking engine oil



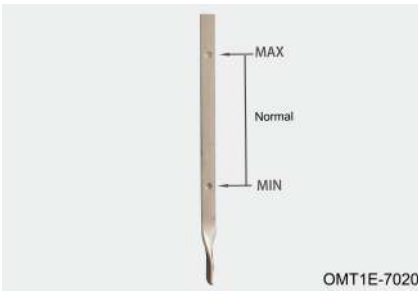
With the engine stalling and cooled down, check the oil level with the dipstick.

Step 1: Warm up the engine and then stop the vehicle on a level ground. Wait for approximately 5 minutes after turning off engine;

Step 2: Open the engine hood, pull the dipstick out and wipe it with a clean cloth;

Step 3: Insert the dipstick to the bottom uniformly and slowly;

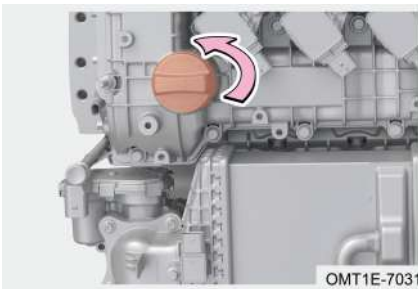
Step 4: Leave the vehicle as is for approximately 3 seconds, pull the dipstick out again and check if oil level is correct.



Put a cloth under the dipstick to avoid oil spilling onto engine or vehicle body.

Do not check the oil level immediately after the engine warms up, and wait until the oil returns into the bottom of engine.

Adding engine oil



Step 1: Turn the engine oil filler cap counterclockwise to open it;

Step 2: Use the funnel to add a small amount of engine oil several times and check the oil level with a dipstick again;

Step 3: When the level reaches within the correct range, turn the engine oil filler cap clockwise to tighten it.

7. MAINTENANCE

ENVIRONMENTAL PROTECTION

Do not discard the waste engine oil and filter in household waste, down the drain or spill on to the ground. Otherwise, it will cause serious environmental pollution. Please handle it according to the local regulations regarding to environmental protection.

CAUTION

- Do not overfill oil, or it may cause damage to engine.
- Only recommended engine oil can be used. Otherwise, all the direct or indirect loss incurred are at customer's own risk.
- If oil is accidentally spilled on the surface of the engine during filling of oil, clean the spilled oil with canvas and other tools before tightening the engine oil filler cap.
- The engine oil filler cap cannot be inverted after removal, to prevent misjudgment caused by oil back flow or the oil flowing through seal ring will overflow automatically after reassembly, resulting in an illusion of oil leakage from the engine oil filler cap.

Checking Transmission Fluid Level

Checking, adding and replacing of transmission fluid should be done by professionals. Please contact the authorized service station.

Checking Brake Fluid Level



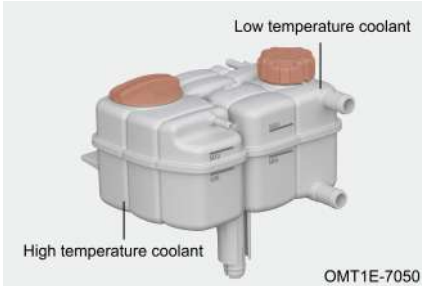
Brake fluid level should be between the "MIN" and "MAX" marks. If the level is at or below the "MIN" mark, add brake fluid and contact the authorized service station for inspection and repair immediately.

CAUTION

- As the brake fluid is highly absorbent, do not leave the brake fluid reservoir cap open for a long period of time.
- Only recommended brake fluid can be used. Otherwise, all the direct or indirect loss incurred are at customer's own risk.
- If some brake fluid splashes onto the painted surface of vehicle body, be sure to clean it with a wet sponge or wash it off with water to avoid corroding the parts or painted surface.

⚠ WARNING

Never allow brake fluid to contact your skin or eyes. If the brake fluid splashes into your eyes, or on your skin, flush the area immediately with a great quantity of water. Get emergency medical attention immediately if necessary.

Checking Coolant Level**Checking coolant**

When engine is cold, the coolant level should be between the "MIN" and "MAX" marks. If the level is at or below the "MIN" mark, add coolant and contact the authorized service station for inspection and repair immediately.

Adding coolant

Step 1: When the engine is cold, open the coolant reservoir cap, and add coolant until reaching "MAX" mark;

Step 2: Start and run the engine to a normal temperature. Observe the coolant level in the reservoir all the time, if the level falls below "MIN" mark, add coolant to an appropriate level in time until the coolant level does not fall down again;

Step 3: Turn off engine and check if coolant level is correct after engine cools down. If not, repeat above operations until level is normal;

Step 4: Install the coolant reservoir cap in place.

⚠ CAUTION

- If coolant level falls rapidly, check radiator, water pipe and water pump for leakage.
- Only recommended coolant can be used. Otherwise, all the direct or indirect loss incurred are at customer's own risk.
- Do not poor quality coolant, because the engine becomes excessively hot as running and inferior coolant cannot provide sufficient cooling and corrosion protection.
- In cold areas, it is necessary to replace with 100% stock solution of antifreeze.

7. MAINTENANCE

WARNING

- When engine is warmed up or becomes hot, the cooling system will be under high pressure. In this case, never open the coolant reservoir cap, otherwise, the escaping steam may cause scalding injury.
- The coolant is poisonous, so pay extreme caution not to spray the liquid on any part of the vehicle, human body or ground when adding coolant. If the coolant accidentally gets onto your skin or into eyes, please wash the affected area with a great quantity of water. Get emergency medical attention immediately if necessary.

Checking Radiator and Condenser

After the vehicle runs for a period of time, the front surface of condenser and radiator could be blocked with some insects, leaves and other objects, which could affect the performance of air conditioning and cooling system, resulting in air conditioning operating improperly and cooling system overheating. It is necessary to clean radiator and condenser at that time.

Condenser: Clean the condenser by blowing compressed air from rear to front through the radiator when the engine is turned off and cools down.

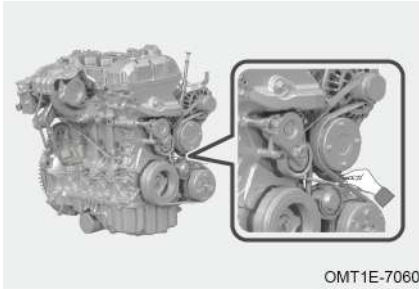
Radiator: It is recommended to clean the radiator surface every year. With engine turned off and cooled down, use compressed air or water to clean the radiator fins and blow off the insects and leaves, etc. Air and water pressure should not exceed 150 kPa. Otherwise, the radiator fins could be damaged.

CAUTION

- The material of radiator fins has good thermal conductivity, which is used to cool the coolant; Do not brush the fins, or it may cause damage to the fins, affecting the cooling effect.
- Do not spray water on the hot radiator while the engine is hot, otherwise, the generated high temperature steam may result in personal injury. Clean radiator when the engine is turned off and cools down.

Checking Drive Belt

Drive belt will be extended after using a period of time, and the belt tension is not enough, which may damage the vehicle, so it is necessary to regularly check the belt tension.



Step 1: Vehicle power is turned to OFF mode;

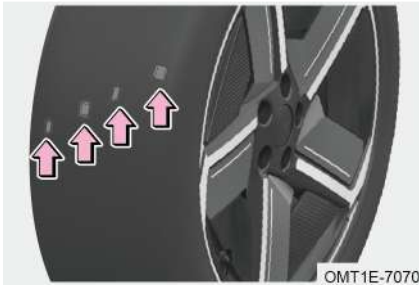
Step 2: Twist the belt with your fingers to check the rotation angle of belt;

Step 3: If rotation angle is more than 90°, please go to authorized service station for inspection and repair.

WARNING

When checking the drive belt tension, turn off the engine and cool it down to ensure that the engine belt is static.

Checking Tires



Check the tire tread by tread wear mark. When tread wear reaches its limit, tread will be in the same plane as the wear band. If such condition occurs, the tire performance and safety will be seriously impacted, and replacement is necessary.

ENVIRONMENTAL PROTECTION

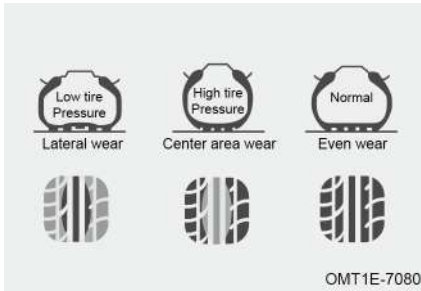
Always discard a used tire carefully. It should be handled according to the local regulations regarding to environmental protection.

■ Observe the following precautions. Failure to do so may lead to an accident, resulting in death or serious injury:

1. Do not use tires that were used on another vehicle.
2. Do not mix tires with remarkably different tread wear.
3. Do not use tires if you do not know how they were used previously.
4. Do not mix tires from different manufacturers, of different models or tread patterns.

7. MAINTENANCE

5. Do not mix differently constructed tires (such as radial, bias-belted or bias-ply tires).
6. Speedometer can be affected by the tire size. If the tire size (diameter) is different from the genuine one, it will not display accurate speed, and may result in accidents, such accidents loss are not covered by the warranty.



Incorrect tire inflation pressure will lead to excessive fuel consumption, shorten the tire service life and reduce the vehicle stability. Therefore, you should drive the vehicle with proper tire pressure (For provisions about the tire inflation pressure, please refer to the tire pressure label on driver side B pillar). When cold tire inflation pressure is higher than specified value or economic tire pressure is used, driving comfort will be reduced accordingly. Please adjust it according to your needs.

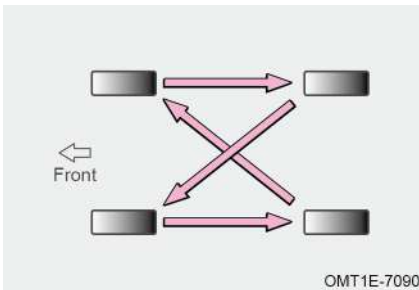
■ Be sure to keep proper tire inflation pressure. Otherwise, the following conditions may occur and result in death or serious injury:

1. Excessive wear.
2. Poor handling.
3. Uneven wear.
4. Poor sealing of the tire bead.
5. Wheel deformation or tire separation.
6. Possibility of blowouts resulting from overheated tires.
7. A greater possibility of tire damage caused by poor road conditions.

⚠ CAUTION

- It is normal that the tire inflation pressure increases after driving for a period of time.
- If the tire needs to be inflated frequently, please go to authorized service station for inspection and repair as soon as possible.
- If a tire often leaks or cannot be properly repaired due to a cut or other damages, it should be replaced.
- Use a tire pressure gauge to check cold tire inflation pressure. Visual inspection of a tire may cause inaccurate estimation on inflation pressure.
- If air leakage occurs while driving, do not continue to drive. Driving even a short distance can damage a tire beyond repair.
- Be sure to install tire valve caps properly. Otherwise, dirt could get into the valve core and cause blockage. If the caps are lost, install new ones as soon as possible.

Tire Rotation



To equalize tire wear and extend tire service life, we recommend that you should rotate your tires approximately every 10,000 km (best adjustment range is 5,000 - 7,000 km); the tire rotation cycle may vary according to your driving habits and road surface conditions.

📖 READ

Tire rotation should be done by professionals, please contact authorized service station.

Checking Battery

Check and make sure that the battery terminals are not corroded and that there are no loose connections, outside cracks, or loose hold-down clamps.

Your vehicle is equipped with maintenance free battery. The new battery should have the same specifications with the genuine one during replacement. We recommend that you should go to a authorized service station for battery replacement.

7. MAINTENANCE

Checking Air Conditioning Filter

Air conditioning filter can prevent outside dust from entering vehicle through air conditioning outlets when driving for a long period of time, and it may be blocked after being used for a long time. If operational efficiency of air conditioning decreases significantly, check filter element and replace it as necessary.

READ

- The replacement of air conditioning filter should be performed by professionals, please contact authorized service station.
- Using air conditioning with filter removed may result in degradation of dustproof performance, affecting efficiency of air conditioning.
- A/C system for some models can achieve PM2.5 protection, please check with your actual vehicle.
- A/C system for some models can achieve N95 protection, please check with your actual vehicle.

Checking Windshield Washer Fluid

If no washer fluid can be sprayed from washer nozzles, stop operating washers and check if it is necessary to add washer fluid. If it cannot operate properly after adding washer fluid, please go to authorized service station for inspection and repair.

CAUTION

- Never add antifreeze in the windshield washer fluid, because antifreeze will damage the body painted surface.
- Do not use water as washer fluid when temperature is below zero. Otherwise, water will be frozen, causing damage to washer.
- The capacity of washer fluid reservoir is 4.5 L. When the washer fluid level is low, low washer fluid level warning light will come on and a faults message will appear on the instrument cluster (if equipped), please refer to the actual vehicle.

Checking Wiper Blades

Check the roughness of wiper blade by sliding on its edge using your finger. Wiper blade will not work effectively, if it is too rough.

CAUTION

- Do not use the wiper blades to remove frost or ice covered on the windshield.
- If there are any chips on the windscreen from gravel, please repair quickly.
- In winter, make sure that the wiper blades are not frozen to the glass before operating them to avoid damaging the wiper blades.
- Butter, silicone and fuel may cause the wiper blades to operate improperly, and it is recommended to clean the wiper blades with washer fluid.
- When the blades are lifted for maintenance, the center connector position of the blades should be properly picked up, it is required to enter maintenance mode for some models (for details, please refer to "Wiper System").

Maintaining wiper blades

- Do not use high-pressure water jet to directly wash the wiper blades while washing the vehicle, or the wiper blades could be deformed.
- In order to prevent the formation of build up that obscures view, it is recommended to clean wiper blades using glass detergent regularly once a week.
- For safety, it is advised to replace the wiper blades once or twice a year, the wiper blades can be purchased at authorized service station.
- After washing the vehicle in the automatic car washer, apply pure water to rinse the windshield and blades, to remove the remaining wax layer.
- Do not operate wipers when windshield is dry. Doing so may scratch glass, resulting in permanent damage to wiper blades.
- Do not clean the windshield with fuel, nail polish remover, paint thinner or similar liquid, which can damage the wiper blades.
- Avoid using glass plating agent and hydrophobic agent on the front and rear windshield glass. The hydrophobic layer will fall off slowly after using, resulting in uneven friction of windshield and abnormal noise of wiper shaking.
- When the windshield surface is frosted or frozen, or when dry soil, insect, sticker or other solid particles are attached to the windshield surface, clean them with a wet cloth in time. Do not use a dry cloth or remove them with wiper blades directly, otherwise it will damage the glass and wiper blades.

7. MAINTENANCE

Using wipers

- Do not swing the wiper arm manually, otherwise it may damage the wiper.
- When there is snow, leaves, branch and other objects, they should be cleaned before operating the wiper.
- Washer fluid should be added as soon as is needed, please use the windshield washer fluid as specified in this manual, and do not use tap water instead.
- In cold weather, always check if the wiper blades are frozen on the windshield before using. If they are frozen on the windshield, always unfreeze before using. Use air conditioning heating and ventilation device to warm up. Do not pour hot water directly to blades, otherwise, windshield may break or wiper blades may deform.

7-3. Regular Maintenance

First Maintenance Information

Maintenance information for the first 15,000 km (HEV mileage) (within 12 months after purchasing vehicle) (for general area)

Date: _____ Mileage: _____

Type of jobs	1	Check lubrication system, cooling system and fuel system for leakage.	Y <input type="checkbox"/>	N <input type="checkbox"/>
	2	Replace engine oil and oil filter.	Y <input type="checkbox"/>	N <input type="checkbox"/>
	3	Check transmission fluid level and color. Add if necessary.	Y <input type="checkbox"/>	N <input type="checkbox"/>
	4	Check coolant level. Add coolant or adjust concentration if necessary.	Y <input type="checkbox"/>	N <input type="checkbox"/>
	5	Check transmission for leakage.	Y <input type="checkbox"/>	N <input type="checkbox"/>
	6	Check steering tie rod boot for damage.	Y <input type="checkbox"/>	N <input type="checkbox"/>
	7	Check propeller shaft constant velocity universal joint boot for damage.	Y <input type="checkbox"/>	N <input type="checkbox"/>
	8	Check brake fluid for leakage and brake pipes for damage.	Y <input type="checkbox"/>	N <input type="checkbox"/>
	9	Check if brake sub cylinders work normally.	Y <input type="checkbox"/>	N <input type="checkbox"/>
	10	Check if tire inflation pressure is as specified.	Y <input type="checkbox"/>	N <input type="checkbox"/>
	11	Check belt tension of alternator and A/C compressor. Adjust tension if necessary.	Y <input type="checkbox"/>	N <input type="checkbox"/>
	12	Check hood hinge and tab.	Y <input type="checkbox"/>	N <input type="checkbox"/>

13	Check A/C system for leakage.	Y <input type="checkbox"/>	N <input type="checkbox"/>
14	Check installation condition for steering universal joint boot and check for damage.	Y <input type="checkbox"/>	N <input type="checkbox"/>
15	Check if gears of transmission shift smoothly.	Y <input type="checkbox"/>	N <input type="checkbox"/>
16	Check coupling bolts between chassis and vehicle body for looseness.	Y <input type="checkbox"/>	N <input type="checkbox"/>
17	Check seat belts for correct operation.	Y <input type="checkbox"/>	N <input type="checkbox"/>
18	Check engine working condition, electronic injection parameters and emission while idling.	Y <input type="checkbox"/>	N <input type="checkbox"/>
19	Check if mechanisms function properly by testing driving.	Y <input type="checkbox"/>	N <input type="checkbox"/>
20	Check that there is no obvious rusting or deformation on the power battery surface.	Y <input type="checkbox"/>	N <input type="checkbox"/>
21	Check that the fixing bolt of power battery is free of crack, rusting and falling off.	Y <input type="checkbox"/>	N <input type="checkbox"/>
22	Check waterproof vent valve of power battery for looseness and deformation, and vent hole for blockage.	Y <input type="checkbox"/>	N <input type="checkbox"/>
23	Check power battery connector for dust, water, deterioration and deformation, replace as necessary.	Y <input type="checkbox"/>	N <input type="checkbox"/>
24	Check that the appearance is intact and there are no cuts and other damages for low voltage wire harness connector; the connection is normal without looseness, falling off, water, etc.	Y <input type="checkbox"/>	N <input type="checkbox"/>
25	Check that the high voltage circuit connector is connected properly without looseness, rusting, crack, etc.; the wire harness is tightened without shaking.	Y <input type="checkbox"/>	N <input type="checkbox"/>

Maintenance Schedule

The maintenance schedule lists vehicle maintenance items that need to be carried out. Please go to authorized service station for maintenance according to mileage in maintenance schedule.

If your vehicle is often used in severe driving conditions, you should follow the maintenance requirement each 5,000 km or 6 months (whichever comes first).

I: Inspect, adjust, clean or replace if necessary; R: Replace.

7. MAINTENANCE

For general driving conditions*											
Maintenance Item	Months	12	24	36	48	60	72	84	96	108	120
	km×1,000 (HEV mileage)	15	30	45	60	75	90	105	120	135	150
For severe driving conditions*											
Maintenance Item	Months	6	12	18	24	30	36	42	48	54	60
	km×1,000 (HEV mileage)	5	10	15	20	25	30	35	40	45	50
Meter Indicating System											
Video and Entertainment System											
Diagnostic Tester Inspection											
Front Wiper Blades											
Rear Wiper Blades											
Wiper System											
Cooling Effect											
Air Conditioning System											
Air Conditioning Filter		It is recommended to be replaced every 1 year or 10,000 km (whichever comes first). If the maintenance period is more than 1 year or 10,000 km, it is recommended to replace each maintenance.									
Coolant Level											
Freezing Point of Coolant											
Coolant		It is recommended to replace every 2 years or 40,000 km (whichever comes first).									
Brake Fluid		It is recommended to replace every 2 years or 40,000 km (whichever comes first).									
Brake Fluid Level											
Water Content of Brake Fluid											

For general driving conditions*											
Maintenance Item	Months	12	24	36	48	60	72	84	96	108	120
	km×1,000 (HEV mileage)	15	30	45	60	75	90	105	120	135	150
For severe driving conditions*											
Maintenance Item	Months	6	12	18	24	30	36	42	48	54	60
	km×1,000 (HEV mileage)	5	10	15	20	25	30	35	40	45	50
Engine Oil and Oil Filter	It is recommended to replace every 1 years or 15,000 km (whichever comes first).										
Engine Oil Level											
Transmission Fluid and External Filter Assembly	It is recommended to replace every 4 years or 40,000 km (whichever comes first).										
Transmission Fluid Level											
Fuel Filter	External fuel filter: Replace every 30,000 km; Internal fuel filter: The integrated fuel pump is maintenance free type(troubleshoot the cause of failure)										
Battery Voltage											
Shock Absorber											
Propeller Shaft and Boot											
Torque of Chassis Bolt											
Steering Gear											
Steering Column											
Steering Link, Ball and Boot											
Tire Appearance											
Tire Pattern											
Tire Inflation Pressure											
Spare Tire Inflation Pressure											

7. MAINTENANCE

For general driving conditions*											
Maintenance Item	Months	12	24	36	48	60	72	84	96	108	120
	km×1,000 (HEV mileage)	15	30	45	60	75	90	105	120	135	150
For severe driving conditions*											
Maintenance Item	Months	6	12	18	24	30	36	42	48	54	60
	km×1,000 (HEV mileage)	5	10	15	20	25	30	35	40	45	50
Torque of Wheel Bolt											
Tire Rotation	It is recommended to rotate your tires every 10,000 km (the optimal adjustment range is 5,000 - 7,000 km).										
Spark Plug	Replace every 30,000 km (Fuel mileage).										
Brake Plate											
Brake Disc											
Air Filter	It is recommended to be replaced every 1 year or 10,000 km (whichever comes first). If the maintenance period is more than 1 year or 10,000 km, it is recommended to replace each maintenance.										
Drive Belt											
Engine Oil Pan and Drain Bolts											
Transmission Housing Body											
Related Fluid Line (- such as steering, brake, fuel etc.) and Wire Harness											
There is no obvious rusting or deformation on the power battery surface											
The fixing bolt of power battery is free of crack, rusting and falling off											

For general driving conditions*											
Maintenance Item	Months	12	24	36	48	60	72	84	96	108	120
	km×1,000 (HEV mileage)	15	30	45	60	75	90	105	120	135	150
For severe driving conditions*											
Maintenance Item	Months	6	12	18	24	30	36	42	48	54	60
	km×1,000 (HEV mileage)	5	10	15	20	25	30	35	40	45	50
Waterproof vent valve of power battery is not loose, deformed, and vent hole is not blocked											
Power battery connector is free of dust, water, aging and deformation											
The appearance is intact and there are no cuts and other damages for low voltage wire harness connector; the connection is normal without looseness, falling off, water, etc											
The high voltage circuit connector is connected properly without looseness, rusting, crack, etc.; the wire harness is tightened without shaking											
Charcoal Canister Filter (If Equipped)	Replace every 3 years or 60,000 km (whichever comes first).										
Battery	Maintenance-free (except for the cause of failure).										
Throttle Valve	It is recommended to clean every 15,000 km.										

7. MAINTENANCE

For general driving conditions*											
Maintenance Item	Months	12	24	36	48	60	72	84	96	108	120
	km×1,000 (HEV mileage)	15	30	45	60	75	90	105	120	135	150
For severe driving conditions*											
Maintenance Item	Months	6	12	18	24	30	36	42	48	54	60
	km×1,000 (HEV mileage)	5	10	15	20	25	30	35	40	45	50
Four-wheel Alignment	Check four-wheel alignment every 20,000 km and adjust if necessary.										
Fuel Vapor Rubber Pipe	It is recommended to replace every 10 years or 500,000 km (whichever comes first).										
Refueling Hose of Fuel	It is recommended to replace every 5 years or 200,000 km for products made of ordinary rubber (such as NBR+PVC/CSM, etc.) (whichever comes first); It is recommended to replace every 10 years or 500,000 km for products made of fluororubber (whichever comes first). It is recommended to replace the above hoses timely which may cause performance defect such as crack.										
*: We recommend that you ask your authorized service station for the actual maintenance schedule applied to your vehicle.											

READ

- The frequency of scheduled inspection and maintenance services in the table is minimal. However, it may be necessary that they be performed more frequently depending on road conditions, weather, atmospheric conditions and vehicle usage. These conditions may differ from one country to another. Therefore, there may be special requirement in your country. We recommend that you ask your authorized service station for the actual maintenance schedule applied to your vehicle.
- Continue periodic maintenance beyond 150,000 km or 120 months by returning to the third column of the maintenance schedule and adding 150,000 km or 120 months to the column headings.
- For special area, there may be special maintenance specifications. We recommend that you ask your authorized service station for the actual maintenance specifications applied to your vehicle.

 CAUTION

- The engine oil and oil filter should be replaced more frequently if the vehicle is driven under severe conditions mentioned in the following examples*.
- It should be checked every 5,000 km or 6 months (whichever comes first) if the vehicle is driven under severe conditions mentioned in the following examples*.
- The lubricant should be replaced every 5,000 km or 6 months (whichever comes first) if the vehicle is driven in the following areas.
 - High humidity areas.
 - Mountainous areas.
 - Extremely cold and hot areas.
 - Drive on rough roads (bumpy roads, gravel roads, snow, etc.) for a long time.
 - Drive on mountain roads, uphill/downhill for a long time.
 - Drive the vehicle for a short distance frequently.
 - In many cases, drive in high temperature (higher than 32°C), heavy traffic urban road.
 - When used as a police car, taxi, commercial vehicle, trailer, etc.

7. MAINTENANCE

CAUTION

- The air filter and air conditioning filter should be replaced more frequently if the vehicle is driven under severe conditions mentioned in the following examples*.

*Examples of severe driving conditions:

- Drive in extremely cold and hot weather (only for engine oil, engine oil level, steering and suspension system).
- Drive the vehicle for a short distance frequently (only for engine oil, engine oil level, disc brake pads and discs/front and rear axle boots and axle shaft joint portions, brake lining and drums).
- Drive on dusty roads (only for air cleaner element, disc brake pads and discs/front and rear axle boots and axle shaft joint portions, brake lining and drums, air filter element for the climate control system).
- Drive on rough and/or muddy roads (only for disc brake pads and discs/front and rear axle boots and axle shaft joint portions, brake lining and drums, air filter element for the climate control system).
- Drive in areas where road salt or other corrosive materials are used (only for fuel system, lines and connections, disc brake pads and discs/front and rear axle boots and axle shaft joint portions, brake lining and drums, inspect brake lines and check operations of parking and service brake system, steering and suspension system).
- In the coastal areas (only for fuel system, lines and connections, disc brake pads and discs/front and rear axle boots and axle shaft joint portions, brake lining and drums, inspect brake lines and check operations of parking and service brake system, steering and suspension system).
- If the vehicle is involved in a traffic accident, soaking in water, bumping, or alarming, please go to authorized service station for inspection and repair in time.
- Never overcharge/discharge and change the setting parameters of power battery system without authorization.
- A/C temperature setting in the vehicle should be appropriate, and the A/C operating time should not be too long.
- Prevent the power battery system from entering water when washing the vehicle.
- The vehicle should avoid wading in too deep water. If the vehicle wades in the water, it should drive slowly to prevent water from splashing into the power battery box.
- The vehicle cannot be started when the battery power is too low.
- Before driving, check the remaining charge (SOC value) of the power battery. Please charge and then drive the vehicle if necessary according to the mileage to be driven to prevent power failure and the vehicle stopping in the middle. During driving, if SOC is lower than 30%, rapid acceleration

 CAUTION

and high-speed driving should be avoided, and the vehicle should be driven to the nearest charging pile for charging as soon as possible.

- When using in high-temperature weather in summer, it is recommended to keep the vehicle stationary for 30 minutes before charging (if it needs to be charged), and then keep the vehicle stationary for 30 minutes after charging to prevent the high temperature alarm caused by the continuous use of battery system and the accumulation of heat, which will affect the service life of battery system.
- When using in low-temperature weather in winter, it is recommended to charge the vehicle immediately after using to prevent the temperature of power battery system from dropping below 0° C, which will affect the service life of battery and use safety during charging.

Technical Data

Fluid Name	Specification	After-sale Maintenance
Oil (SQRH4J15)	C5 0W-20	4.5±0.2L (replace the oil and oil filter at the same time)
Transmission Fluid (130HHB)	TITAN EG DHT 5105	3.7±0.2L
High Temperature Coolant (Engine coolant)	Organic Acid Technology (OAT)	8L
Low Temperature Coolant (Power battery coolant)	Organic Acid Technology (OAT)	7.5L
Brake Fluid	DOT4	/
Refrigerant	R1234yf	575±15g
Compressor oil	PVE	180±10g

 READ

Contains fluorinated greenhouse gases and CO2 equivalent 0.0002875t.

7. MAINTENANCE

CAUTION

- Filling amount is equal to discharging amount when there is no oil leakage for automatic transmission, please go to authorized service station for details.
- Only genuine parts and fluids can be used, otherwise your claim rights will be affected.
- For engine oil and transmission fluid, only use brands and specifications recommended by authorized service station.
- The above filling amount is only for reference. The specific fluid amount should be based on the actual vehicle measurement.

SPECIFICATION

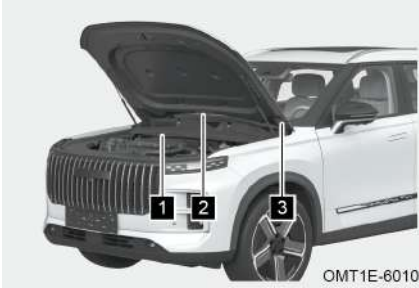
8-1. Label Location	Fuel System	287
Vehicle Identification Number (VIN)	Suspension System.....	288
Vehicle Product Label	Power Battery.....	288
Engine Number.....	Battery.....	288
Microwave Window	Wheel Alignment.....	289
8-2. Vehicle Specifications	Wheels and Tires	289
Vehicle Dimensions	Light Bulb Specification.....	290
Vehicle Type.....	Vehicle Components That Are Not Included in the Vehicle Size	291
Vehicle Weight.....	Your Rights	292
Vehicle Performance	Contact Us	292
Drive Motor		
Engine Performance.....		

8. SPECIFICATION

8-1. Label Location

Vehicle Identification Number (VIN)

Vehicle Identification Number (VIN) on actual vehicle



- 1** Vehicle Identification Number (VIN) is engraved on lower right of engine compartment drip channel garnish.
- 2** Vehicle Identification Number (VIN) label is located on hood as shown in the illustration.
- 3** Vehicle Identification Number (VIN) label is located on upper left of driver side instrument panel, and can be seen from the outside through the front windshield.



Vehicle Identification Number (VIN) label is located on back door as shown in the illustration.

READ

- Due to regional differences, the location of VIN code shall be subject to the actual vehicle.
- If VIN needs to be read, it is recommended to read the data through the operation of authorized service station professional serviceman.

CAUTION

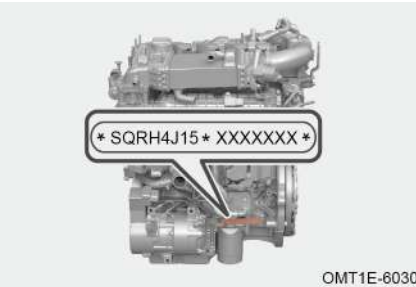
It is forbidden to cover, paint, weld, cut, drill or remove Vehicle Identification Number (VIN) and areas around it.

Vehicle Product Label



Vehicle product label is located on right quarter outer panel as shown in the illustration.

Engine Number



Engine number is located on engine block as shown in the illustration.

Microwave Window

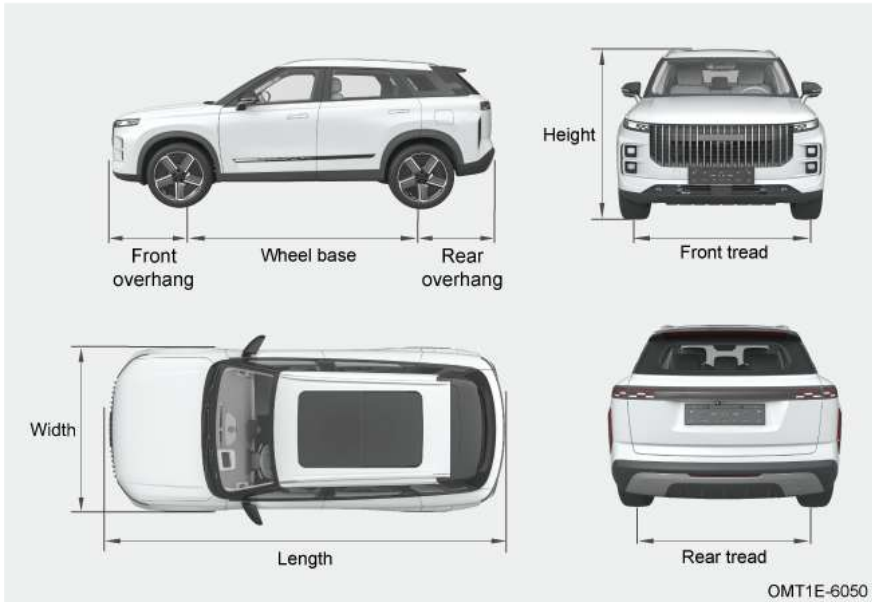


The microwave window is located at right side on back of front windshield inside rear view mirror where is for wireless RF signal transmission and installation of automotive electronic identification.

8. SPECIFICATION

8-2. Vehicle Specifications

Vehicle Dimensions



Overall Size	Length (mm)	4,500
	Width (mm)	1,865
	Height (mm)	1,670
Wheel Base (mm)		2,672
Tread	Front (mm)	1,582
	Rear (mm)	1,604
Overhang	Front (mm)	906
	Rear (mm)	922

Vehicle Type

Vehicle Type	4 × 2 front-wheel drive, front-wheel steering, transverse front-engine, 2-compartment, 5-door, 5-seat, integral body, left-hand drive
Engine Model	SQRH4J15
Engine Type	Vertical, 4-cylinder in-line, watercooled, 4-stroke, double overhead camshaft, turbocharging, intercooler
Fuel Supply Type	Direct injection
Transmission Model	130HHB

Vehicle Weight

Vehicle Curb Weight (kg)		1,795
Vehicle Curb Axle Weight	Front Axle (kg)	1,043
	Rear Axle (kg)	752
Manufacturer Maximum Total Weight (kg)		2,210
Manufacturer Maximum Total Axle Weight	Front Axle (kg)	1,182
	Rear Axle (kg)	1,028
Seating Capacity (Including Driver) (Person)		5

WARNING

Please follow the vehicle load specified in the instruction manual and do not exceed the allowable total weight. Otherwise, the brake and handling performance of the vehicle may change and may cause a personal injury and accident.

8. SPECIFICATION

Vehicle Performance

Passing Performance	Minimum Ground Clearance (mm)		147 (full rated)/174 (unladen)
	Minimum Turning Diameter (m)	Left Turn (m)	≤ 11.0
		Right Turn (m)	≤ 11.0
	Approach Angle (°)		20°
	Departure Angle (°)		28°
Power Performance	Maximum Vehicle Speed for PHEV (km/h)		180
	Maximum Vehicle Speed for Pure Electric Vehicle (km/h)		120
	Maximum Gradeability for PHEV (%)		≥ 3

Drive Motor

Items	Parameter
Motor type	Permanent magnet synchronous motor
Nominal voltage (V)	350
Rated power (Kw)	70
Peak power (Kw)	150
Peak torque (N·m)	310
Peak speed (rpm)	16,000

Engine Performance

Engine Mode	SQRH4J15
Cylinder Bore Diameter (mm)	72
Piston Stroke (mm)	92
Displacement (mL)	1,499
Compression Ratio	14.5 : 1
Maximum Net Power (kW)	105
Maximum Net Power Speed (r/min)	5,200
Maximum Net Torque (N•m)	215
Maximum Net Torque Speed (r/min)	2,500

Fuel System

Fuel Type*1	Unleaded gasoline with an octane number of 85 or higher
	Unleaded gasoline with an octane number of 91 or higher
	Unleaded gasoline with an octane number of 92 or higher
	Unleaded gasoline with an octane number of 95 or higher (unleaded super gasoline)
	E22-E100
Fuel Tank Type	Metal fuel tank
Fuel Tank Total Capacity	60 L
Fuel Pump	Electric fuel pump

*1: Please use the fuel recommended by authorized dealers.

READ

Vehicle with catalytic converters can only use unleaded gasoline. In order to avoid the accident of filling wrong fuel type, the fuel filler pipe adopts a neck-type fuel filler port design, and only the standard unleaded gasoline fuel gun can be used for fueling operation.

8. SPECIFICATION

CAUTION

- Use only the fuel type we recommend.
- The use of off-specification gasoline may cause damage to the engine and such damage is not covered under warranty.
- Using leaded gasoline will cause three-way catalytic converter to lose its effectiveness and emission control system to function improperly.
- If you accidentally fill leaded gasoline to the oil tank and start the engine (- even if only a small amount is filled), it will cause permanent damage to the catalytic converter. Therefore, if you accidentally fill leaded gasoline, please go to authorized service station for inspection and repair immediately.

Suspension System

Front Suspension	Macpherson type independent suspension, unadjustable height, with anti-roll stabilizer bar, cone coiled spring, double adjustable shock absorber
Rear Suspension	Multi-link type independent suspension, unadjustable height, with anti-roll stabilizer bar, cone coiled spring, double adjustable shock absorber

Power Battery

Items	Parameter
Cell Capacity (ah)	54
System Capacity (ah)	54
Total Energy (kwh)	18.316
Cell Voltage (V)	3.2
Rated Voltage (V)	339.2
Drive Mode	2WD
Cooling Method	Liquid cooling

Battery

Battery Model	40AH AGM lead-acid battery
---------------	----------------------------

Wheel Alignment

Front Wheel	Front Wheel Camber	25' ±45'
	Kingpin Caster Angle	4°28' ±60'
	Kingpin Inclination Angle	13°43' ±60'
	Front Wheel Toe-in	5' ±5' (one side)
Rear Wheel	Rear Wheel Camber	42' ±30'
	Rear Wheel Toe-in	5' ±10' (one side)

Wheels and Tires

Tire Model		235/50 R19; T125/80 R17; T125/80 D17
Rim Model		19 × 7 1/2J; 17 × 4T
Cold Tire Inflation Pressure (kPa) (Unladen)	Front Wheel	230
	Rear Wheel	230
	Spare Tire (Non-full size)	420
Tightening Torque of Wheel bolts		M12: 150 ± 12 N·m M14: 180 ± 18 N·m
Wheel dynamic balance requirements for vehicle with a maximum design speed of more than 100 km/h		Allowable residual balanced mass: Clamp balance block side ≤ 8 g, paste balance block side ≤ 10 g

 READ

The tire inflation pressures listed in the table apply to cold tires. The pressure increases slightly when the tire is heated, but it is unnecessary to lower the pressure.

8. SPECIFICATION

CAUTION

- Tire inflation pressure should be checked at least once a month, and tire pressure is especially important at high speeds.
- In order to facilitate you to find the specified value for inflation pressure, there is adhesive sticker label on the driver doorsill, which is marked with the specified value for cold tire inflation pressure.

Light Bulb Specification

Light Bulb Name	Nominal Light Source (Type/Model)	Replacement Advice
Headlights	LED	Replaced by authorized service station
Front Fog Light	LED	Replaced by authorized service station
Rear Fog Light	LED	Replaced by authorized service station
Daytime Running Light	LED	Replaced by authorized service station
Front Position Light	LED	Replaced by authorized service station
Rear Position Light	LED	Replaced by authorized service station
Brake Light	LED	Replaced by authorized service station
High Mounted Stop Light	LED	Replaced by authorized service station
Back-up Light	LED	Replaced by authorized service station
Front Turn Signal Light	LED	Replaced by authorized service station
Side Turn Signal Light	LED	Replaced by authorized service station
Rear Turn Signal Light	LED	Replaced by authorized service station
License Plate Light	LED	Replaced by authorized service station

Note: The light bulb specifications are for reference only. Please refer to the actual vehicle configuration.

Vehicle Components That Are Not Included in the Vehicle Size

Components not included in vehicle length size

The following devices do not have laden function and their sizes are not more than 50 mm beyond the vehicle front end or rear end, and fillet radius of edge and corner is no less than 5 mm:

- Wiper and washer
- Outer identification, including registered trademark, manufacturer name, origin, model name and type, engine emission, transmission type, driving type and other distinguishing identification of the vehicle
- Lights and light signal device
- Anti-collision rubber block and equivalent
- External sunshade device
- Customs sealing device and its protective device
- Device used to fixed raincloth and its protective device
- Locking device, hinge, handle, controller, switch
- Step plate (or ladder), vehicle climbing step plate and handle on top of bumper used for cleaning windows.
- Rear emblem plate with LOGO
- Removable trailer or towing device
- Exhaust tail pipe

Components not included in the vehicle width measurements:

- Indirect view device
- School bus stop plate in inoperative state

The following devices do not have laden function and their one side size exceeds the side of vehicle for no more than 50 mm, and fillet radius of edge and corner is no less than 5 mm:

- Outer identification, including registered trademark, manufacturer name, origin, model name and type, engine emission, transmission type, driving type and other distinguishing identification of the vehicle
- Lights and light signal device
- Anti-collision rubber block and equivalent
- Customs sealing device and its protective device
- Device used to fixed raincloth and its protective device
- Local water drain slot: Refers to the water drain slot used to guide rain flow above driver door (or window) and passenger door, both sides of front windshield
- Flexible protruding part of splash proof system
- Retractable step plate, entering/exiting slope of bus, lifting platform and equivalent that is in the retract state

8. SPECIFICATION

- Locking device, hinge, handle, controller, switch
- Tire failure signal device
- Tire pressure indicator
- Deformed part of tire wall directly above contact point between tire and ground
- Reversing assistance device
- Exhaust tail pipe

Components not included in the vehicle height measurements:

Soft part of antenna

Device without laden function:

- Intake duct
- Indirect view device
- Current collecting device of electric vehicle (including its fixing device)
- Vehicle rear air guide device is removable or folding, and its deployed and retracted length is no more than 2,000 mm and 200 mm respectively.
- Tailboard, entering/exiting slope and equivalent with a horizontal length not exceeding 300 mm in retract state
- Tail ladder

Your Rights

Depending on local law, you may have the following rights regarding your personal data: the right to object or withdraw consent, the right to access, update, and correct inaccuracies of your personal data, the right to have your personal data restricted or deleted, the right to receive your personal data and request its transfer to another organization where technically feasible, and the right to be informed of and lodge a complaint with your local data protection authority.

Contact Us

To make a query, raise a concern, or exercise your data subject rights, please feel free to contact us at privacy@mychery.com. This applies if you are based within the European Economic Area and the UK.

We take your privacy seriously and aim to respond to you within one month or within the timeline specified by the relevant local privacy protection law, after confirming your identity.

If you believe that we have not adequately addressed your complaints or concerns, you have the right to lodge a complaint with a competent data protection authority.

A

A/C Setting	110
Active Speed Limit (If Equipped)	167
Adaptive Cruise Control System (ACC) (If Equipped)	160
Adjusting Steering Wheel	36
After Starting Engine	15
Air Conditioning Cooling Operation	112
Air Conditioning Heating Operation	114
Air Outlets Airflow Control	111
Air Quality Control System (If Equipped)	112
Anti-lock Brake System (ABS) ...	204
Assist Grips	117
Audio Buttons	101
Audio View	95
Authorized Service Station is at Your Service	258
AUTO HOLD	143
Automatic Air Conditioning	105
Automatic Cabin Ventilation and Automatic Cabin Cleaning (If Equipped)	111
Automatic Emergency Braking System (AEB) / Front Collision Warning System (FCW) (If Equipped)	181
Automatic Inside Rear View Mirror	37
Automatic Transmission	137
Auxiliary Fascia Armrest Box Cooling Function	115

B

Back Door Emergency Opening .	130
Battery	288
Before Starting Engine	14
Blind Spot Detection (BSD) System (If Equipped)	176
Brake	145

C

Charging Device	217
-----------------------	-----

Check the Exhaust System	17
Checking Air Conditioning Filter .	268
Checking Battery	267
Checking Brake Fluid Level	262
Checking Coolant Level	263
Checking Drive Belt	265
Checking Fuse	254
Checking Oil Level	261
Checking Radiator and Condenser	264
Checking Tires	265
Checking Transmission Fluid Level	262
Checking Windshield Washer Fluid	268
Checking Wiper Blades	269
Child Restraint Systems	65
Coat hooks	118
Cruise Control System (If Equipped)	159
Cybersecurity Notice for Scrapping or Resale	23
Cybersecurity Support Service Update or Termination Notice	23

D

Delivery Card	5
Delivery Inspection Certificate	11
Door Mechanical Switch	87
Door Open Warning System (DOW)	179
Drive Away Information System (If Equipped)	187
Drive Motor	286
Driver Monitoring System	190
Driver Monitoring System (DMS) (If Equipped)	190
Driving on Road Covered with Ice and Snow	21
Driving Recorder (DVR) (If Equipped)	199
Driving Through Water	19

E

ECALL (If Equipped)	236
Effective Range	79

ALPHABETICAL INDEX

Electric Parking Brake System (EPB)	141
Electric Power Steering System (EPS)	140
Electronic Stability Program System (ESP)	202
Emergency Lane Keeping (ELK) System (If Equipped)	175
Emergency Towing	252
Engine Number	283
Engine Performance	287
Extended Function	206
Exterior Lighting	44

F

First Maintenance Information ...	270
Fogging Instructions for Light	50
Follow Me Home Function	48
Fragrance System (If Equipped)	115
Front Seats	52
Front Wiper Operation	40
Fuel System	287
Fuel Tank Cap	130
Fuse Box	253

H

Hazard Light	236
Head Restraints	51
Head Up Display (HUD) System (If Equipped)	198
Headlight Height Adjustment	48
Heated Steering Wheel (If Equipped)	36
Hill Descent Control System (HDC) (If Equipped)	170
Hooks	118
Horn	35
How to Read This Manual	2
How to Save Fuel and Extend Life of Vehicle	13

I

If Battery is Flat	246
--------------------------	-----

If Engine Coolant Temperature is High	246
If You Have a Flat Tire (Tire Repair Liquid)	239
If You Have a Flat Tire While Driving (Tire Replacement) (If equipped)	241
If Your Vehicle Cannot Start Normally	249
Immobilizer System	83
Index	2
Installing Child Restraint Systems	70
Installing Towing Eyelet	251
Instrument cluster view	26
Intelligent Avoidance System (If Equipped)	186
Intelligent Headlight Function (IHC) (If Equipped)	49
Intelligent Speed Control System	169
Intelligent Speed Control System (SCF) (If Equipped)	168
Interior Lighting	47

K

Key Information	77
Keyless Entry	81

L

Lane Departure Prevention System (LDP) (If Equipped)	173
Lane Departure Warning System (LDW) (If Equipped)	171
Light Bulb Specification	290

M

Maintenance Schedule	271
Manual Inside Rear View Mirror ...	37
Microwave Window	283
Mode Adjustment	110
Moon Roof Jam Protection Function (If Equipped)	94
Moon Roof Remote Control Function (If Equipped)	94

Multi-Collision Brake System
(MCB) (If Equipped)..... 197

N

New Vehicle Break-in 12
New Vehicle Inspection..... 11
Normal Maintenance 260

O

Off-road Driving 18
Opening/closing the hood 125
Operation/Malfunction Indicator ... 27
Outside Rear View Mirror 38

P

Panoramic View Monitor Sys-
tem (If Equipped) 191
Parking on Slope 16
Parking Operations 15
Parking Radar System..... 195
"Person-to-Person" Consulta-
tive Service Card..... 7
Phone-link 102
Pictorial Index 2
Plug-in Hybrid Electric Vehicle
System (PHEV) 207
Power Back Door..... 126
Power Battery 207, 288
Power Moon Roof 92
Power Outlet..... 123
Power Windows..... 89

R

Rear Collision Warning System
(RCW) (If Equipped) 180
Rear Cross Traffic Alert
(RCTA) System (If Equipped) ... 178
Rear Cross Traffic Braking
(RCTB) System (If Equipped)... 178
Rear Seat 55
Recommended Child Restraint
Systems 67
Reflective Strip 237

Remote Starting for Smart Key 84
Repair and Maintenance 258
Replacing Fuse 254
Replacing Key Battery 78

S

Safety Check 14, 259
Seat Belt Pretensioner (If
Equipped) 64
Seat Belts 59
Seat Heating Function 56
Seat Memory Function (If
Equipped) 58
Seat Portable Entry / Exit
Function (If Equipped)..... 59
Seat Ventilation Function (If
Equipped) 57
Smart Key Vehicle Locating..... 84
Smart Vehicle Locating Function .. 49
Spare Tools (If Equipped)..... 238
Speed Limit Assist System
(SLA) (If Equipped)..... 158
SRS Airbags 146
Storage Space 119
Sun Visors , Vanity Mirrors and
TicketClips 124
Suspension System 288
Symbols in the Manual 3

T

Table of Contents 2
Technical Data 279
Tire Chains 21
Tire Pressure Monitoring Sys-
tem (TPMS) (If Equipped)..... 187
Tire Rotation 267
Top Tether 68
Towing Vehicle 250
Traffic Jam Assist System
(TJA) / Integrated Cruise As-
sist System (ICA) (If
Equipped) 184

U

USB Port 124

ALPHABETICAL INDEX

User Registration Certificate 4

V

Vehicle Center 96
Vehicle Components That Are
Not Included in the Vehicle
Size 291
Vehicle Dimensions 284
Vehicle Identification Number
(VIN) 282
Vehicle Performance 286
Vehicle Product Label 283
Vehicle Security 82
Vehicle Type 285
Vehicle Weight 285
Voice Recognition Function (If
Equipped) 102

W

Warning Triangle 237
Wheel Alignment 289
Wheels and Tires 289
When Driving 15
When Driving on Slippery
Road Surfaces 19
Window Jam Protection Func-
tion (If Equipped) 91
Window Remote Control
Function 90
Winter Driving Tips 20
Wiper Blade Replacement 42
Wiper Nozzle Heating Function
(If Equipped) 42
Wireless Charging (If
Equipped) 116

Emergency Response Guide

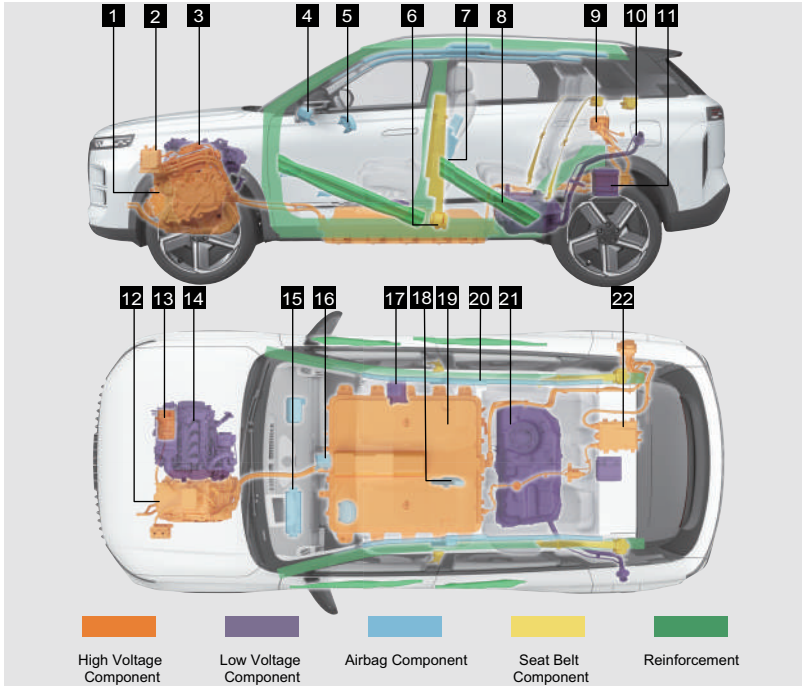
1-1. RESCUE INFORMATION	Parking Operations.....	9
Plug-in Hybrid Electric Vehicle System Information.....	Lifting Vehicle	10
Disconnecting 12 V Battery....	Gas Strut/ Preloaded spring	10
High Voltage Power Release Method.....	Back Door Emergency Opening.....	10
Unlocking/Releasing Charging Gun	Emergency Rescue	11
	Towing Vehicle.....	14
1-2. Rescue Program Information		
Protection Device Required for Rescuer.....		8

1. RESCUE INFORMATION

1-1. RESCUE INFORMATION

Plug-in Hybrid Electric Vehicle System Information

Components of PHEV Key System



- | | | |
|------------------------------------|--------------------------------|---|
| 1 Hybrid Transmission | 2 High Pressure Heater | 3 High Voltage Power Distribution Unit |
| 4 Front Passenger Airbag | 5 Driver Airbag | 6 Seat Belt Pretensioner (If Equipped) |
| 7 Side Airbag (If Equipped) | 8 Guard Plate | 9 AC Power/DC Power Charging Port |
| 10 Fuel Filler | 11 Battery (12 V) | 12 Front Motor Controller |
| 13 Electric Compressor | 14 Engine | 15 Driver Knee Airbag (If Equipped) |
| 16 Airbag Module | 17 Vehicle Control Unit | 18 Central Airbag (If Equipped) |

19 Power Battery

20 Side Curtain Shield
Airbag (If Equipped)21 High Pressure Fuel
Tank22 On-board Charger
Assembly ENVIRONMENTAL PROTECTION

All parts of high voltage components in the illustration should be disposed or recycled according to the local regulations and provisions regarding environmental protection.

 CAUTION

- Never tow the vehicle at high speed when drive wheels are on the ground.
- It is forbidden to manipulate motor controller on high-speed bench without power and water. Never drag the motor to reverse at high speed with highspeed dynamometer bench or carry out similar experiment such as towing at high speed.
- High-voltage system components in hybrid power system mainly include high-voltage wire harness, power battery, on-board charger assembly, high-voltage heater, charging port, electric compressor, front motor controller, and rear motor controller assembly (if equipped); High-voltage system components are very dangerous. Do not touch the high-voltage system components, cables or connectors.

 WARNING

- Personnel without high-voltage technical qualification are not allowed to touch, repair or replace high voltage components or high voltage wire harness in the illustration.
- In case of traffic accident, do not touch any component and high voltage wire harness in the illustration to avoid the second personal injury.
- For towing of plug-in hybrid electric vehicle, strongly recommends that you seek help from professional rescuer or authorized service station.
- When cutting the vehicle for rescue, avoid the components in the illustration and the rescuer must wear basic rescue protective device. Select high voltage rescue protective device or fire rescue protective device according to the site situation. Failure to follow the instructions may cause personal injury or even death.

1. RESCUE INFORMATION

Basic vehicle information

Overall Size	Length (mm)	4,500
	Width (mm)	1,865
	Height (mm)	1,670
Wheel Base (mm)		2,672
Manufacturer Maximum Total Weight (kg)		2,210
Seating Capacity (Including Driver) (Person)		5

Plug-in hybrid electric vehicle system basic information

Battery cells	Type	Lithium ion battery
	Monomer nominal capacity (Ah)	54
	Monomer nominal voltage (V)	3.2
Power battery assembly	Battery pack rated capacity (Ah)	54
	Battery pack nominal voltage (V)	339.2
	Number of battery pack (pieces)	1
Fuel tank capacity (L)	60	

1. RESCUE INFORMATION

WARNING

- After vehicle is started, power system will be hot. Be careful of high voltage and high temperature, and always follow the instructions on the vehicle safety warning signs.
- Never touch, remove or replace components, orange cable and connectors with power system warning signs to prevent high voltage electric shock.

Disconnecting 12 V Battery

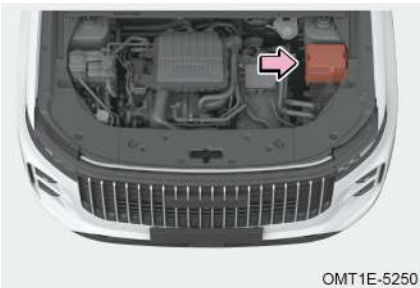


Step 1: Turn vehicle power to OFF mode, and connect jumper cables;

Connect one end of positive cable to positive terminal (+) of battery on discharged vehicle, and the other end to the positive terminal (+) of battery on rescue vehicle.

Connect one end of negative cable to negative terminal (-) of battery on rescue vehicle, and the other end to unpainted metal part on discharged vehicle.

High Voltage Power Release Method



Step 1: Turn vehicle power to OFF mode;

Step 2: Disconnect the negative (-) battery terminal cable;

Step 3: Remove front compartment fuse box cover, refer to fuse box location diagram at fuse box upper cover, disconnect the BMS module power.

Unlocking/Releasing Charging Gun

1

RESCUE INFORMATION

Method 1

Charging gun has anti-theft function. After inserting charging gun and entering full power charging or when doors are locked, charging gun will be locked automatically.

When doors are unlocked, charging gun will be unlocked automatically. If the charging gun is not unplugged within 2 minutes after doors are unlocked, charging gun will be locked again. At this time, charging gun can be unlocked again until doors are locked and then unlocked.

Method 2

When abnormal lock fault occurs in electronic lock of the charging gun or discharging gun, the charging gun and discharging gun can be manually unlocked with electronic lock cable.

Step 1: Make sure that the vehicle is not charged/discharged at present according to charging information displayed on instrument cluster;

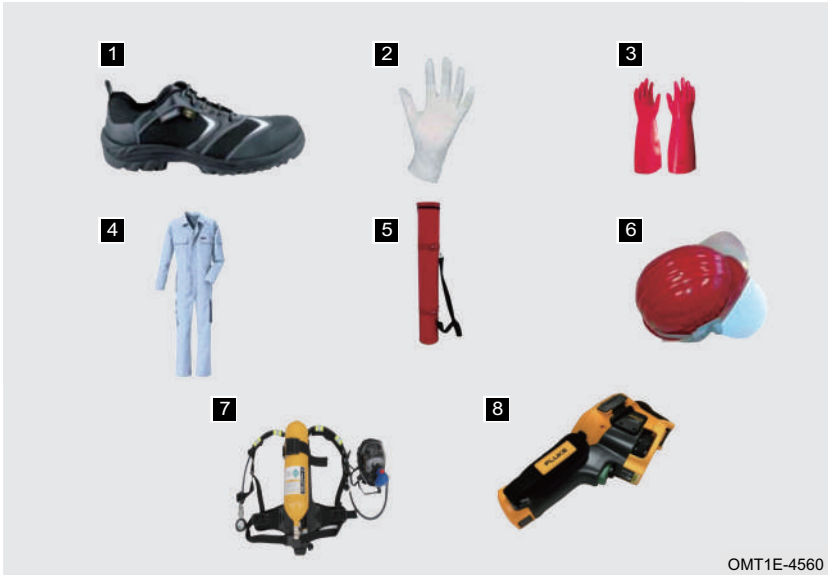
Step 2: Open back door, lift the luggage compartment carpet and take out storage box;

Step 3: Pull the electronic lock cable to manually unlock the charging gun and discharging gun.

1. RESCUE INFORMATION

1-2. Rescue Program Information

Protection Device Required for Rescuer



Basic Rescue Protection Device:

- 1** High Resistance Safety Work Shoes
- 2** Cotton Gloves
- 3** Protective Gloves

High Voltage Rescue Protection Device:

- 4** High Voltage Power Specialist Protective Clothing
- 5** Rubber Sheet
- 6** Safety Helmet with Goggles

Fire Rescue Protection Device:

- 7** Compressed Air Breathing Mask
- 8** Thermal Imaging Camera

WARNING

Rescuer must wear basic rescue protective device. Select high voltage rescue protective device or fire rescue protective device according to the site situation. Failure to follow the instructions may cause personal injury or even death.

Parking Operations



Step 1: Depress brake pedal, and park the vehicle smoothly. When the vehicle is stationary, press P button to switch the gear position to P to activate the parking brake function;

Step 2: The following operations will power off the vehicle:

- After the vehicle is unlocked, the vehicle is parked and all doors, front compartment cover, and luggage compartment are closed, the vehicle is actively powered off after 30 minutes without any.
- If the driver seat is not occupied and all doors (including front compartment cover and luggage compartment) are in closed condition, lock the vehicle with smart key.



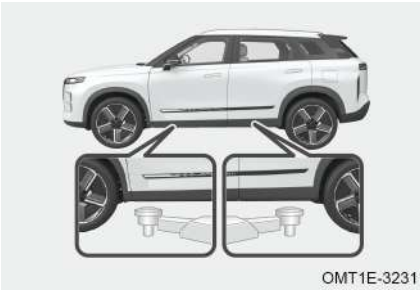
- When the driver seat occupied or with the doors open, long press the power switch for 5s to power off directly.

Electric parking emergency releasing (during vehicle stopping)

When EPB operates, press electric parking brake button and depress the brake pedal, as well as the vehicle power is switched to OFF mode, electric parking is released in emergency. It is recommended to use it only in rescue trailers or rare situations.

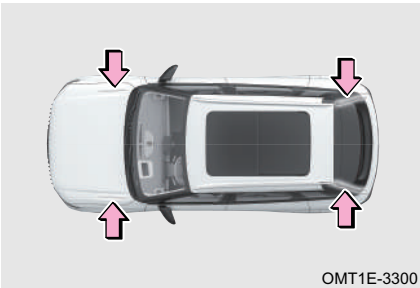
1. RESCUE INFORMATION

Lifting Vehicle



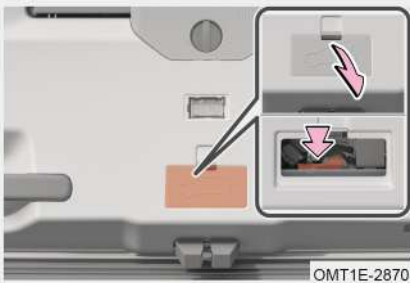
Make sure that the vehicle is on the correct jacking point to avoid damage to high/low voltage cables or power battery when the vehicle is lifted.

Gas Strut/ Preloaded spring



Risk of missile effect of hood.

Back Door Emergency Opening



Back door cannot be opened when battery is depleted or under similar conditions. In this case, the back door can be opened with emergency device switch.

Step 1: Stop the vehicle as safely as possible;

Step 2: Fold the rear seatback;

Step 3: Get in the rear of vehicle and open emergency device cover;

Step 4: Press the emergency switch and then push the back door to open it.

Emergency Rescue

How to avoid water intrusion into high voltage components

1. When a vehicle is flooded, first pull the vehicle out of the water and then cut off the high voltage power supply to avoid greater electric shock hazard due to vehicle immersion.
2. When washing the vehicle, avoid washing the charging port cover switch area with a high pressure water gun, otherwise it may cause the charging port cover to open and cause water to enter the charging port end.
3. Do not charge when there are obvious water stains in the charging port to avoid damage to the vehicle or charging device; When charging the vehicle, do not wash the charging port area to avoid damage to the vehicle or charging device.
4. Do not wipe the door protective panel with wet tissue, wet cloth, detergent etc. Pay attention to protection during the use of vehicle (such as on rainy days, washing vehicle) and try to avoid water intrusion into the door protective panel, otherwise it may cause internal electrical component fault etc.
5. Try to choose a place with a shelter for charging in the severe convective weather; If the vehicle is soaked in water or wading level is above the doorsill position, it may cause water to enter into the high pressure components. It is necessary to contact the authorized service station for proper test and treatment in time; Never drive on a road when water exceeds half of the tires.
6. Try not to drive on a road with unknown depth of water to avoid leakage accidents or damage to high voltage electrical components; If wading is necessary, analyze the road condition and confirm the depth of water before driving, and the water depth should not be higher than the bottom of the body; It is recommended not to stay in deep water for a long time during wading, otherwise vehicle high voltage components may be damaged.

Driving in wade

■ When vehicle drives in wade:

1. If you cannot drive the vehicle away from the waterlogged area, please cut off power supply immediately.
2. When driving in wade, do not stop the vehicle and keep driving at low speed (vehicle speed cannot exceed 10 km/h).
3. Drive the vehicle away from the waterlogged area and park it in a safe area. Check if there is any water in the vehicle, and clean it if there is.

■ After vehicle drives in wade:

1. If the vehicle is severely flooded, all persons in the vehicle must evacuate to a safe area immediately.

1. RESCUE INFORMATION

2. After the vehicle drives in wade, slightly depress the brake pedal several times to remove any residual water from the brake disc and ensure that the brake system can work properly.
3. Go to the authorized service station for routine inspection as soon as possible, as water may enter into components of the drive train system and dilute the grease, causing system malfunction when vehicle drives in wade.

Fire prevention

■ In order to prevent vehicle fires effectively, pay attention to the following precautions during usage:

1. Do not leave flammable and explosive materials in the vehicle.

In hot summer, the internal temperature of the vehicle parked in the sun can reach more than 70°C. If lighters, cleaner, perfume and other flammable and explosive materials are left in the vehicle, it is very easy to cause fire or even explosion.

2. After smoking, make sure that the cigarette butt is completely extinguished.

Smoking is not only harmful to health, but also may cause fires. If the cigarette butt is not completely extinguished, it may cause a fire.

3. It is recommended to regularly go to the authorized service station for inspection.

Check the engine compartment for oil leakage regularly and clean any oil stain or oil on the engine in time.

Check regularly if vehicle circuits, electrical appliances and wire harness connectors, insulation and fixing position are normal. If any problem is found, handle it in time.

4. Do not modify vehicle circuits or add electrical components.

- a. It is strictly prohibited to use fuses or other metal wires that exceed the rated specifications of electrical appliances to replace fuses.

- b. Installation of other electrical appliances (such as high power audio and light) can cause excessive load on circuits, and wire harness is prone to heating, causing fires. Improper modification of electrical appliances and circuits can create contact resistance and abnormal heating, causing fires.

5. Precautions for driving.

When parking the vehicle, especially in summer, it is important to check underneath for flammable substances, such as hay, dead branches and leaves, or wheat straw. If there are flammable substances under the vehicle, it is very likely to cause fires. When driving, the vehicle should also avoid roads covered with flammable materials such as dry leaves, wheat straw and weed etc. as much as possible, or stop vehicle in time to check underneath for flammable materials after passing through such roads. When parking, try to avoid areas exposed to sunlight as much as possible.

6. Always leave portable fire extinguishers in the vehicle and master the usage methods.

To ensure vehicle safety, fire extinguishers should be equipped in the vehicle and regularly inspected and replaced; At the same time, it is important to be familiar with the usage of fire extinguishers and be prepared to avoid being helpless in case of accidents.

7. When repairing or maintaining a vehicle, it is necessary to disconnect the battery (12 V) power.

Fire treatment

■ If the vehicle is on fire, take effective measures promptly and calmly to minimize losses:

1. After the accident occurs, contact the insurance company for post-treatment in time.
2. After the fire department extinguishes the fire, ask for a police certificate and a statement of the fire cause.
3. Call 119 to report to the police in time, at the same time, call the reporting phone number of the insured insurance company and request the insurance company for on-site treatment.
4. Generally, a fire has early warning signs (such as abnormal noise or odor from body). Once abnormal conditions are found, shut down the vehicle in time, and carry out active rescue according to the actual situation.
5. If smoke is found in the front compartment, do not open the front compartment cover immediately (As doing so will intensify the combustion and spread of the fire due to a large amount of air. Because the combustion material in the front compartment is limited, closing the front compartment cover can control the slow burning of the fire, which is conducive to extinguishing it).
6. If fire occurs, leave the dangerous area immediately and call the fire telephone. Be sure to inform the rescuers that this is a hybrid vehicle, and deliver the onboard rescue information card to the rescuers.

WARNING

When fire occurs, never touch any part of vehicle directly. Keep away from the vehicle and wait for professional rescuers wearing appropriate protective device to operate it.

Power battery leakage

If power battery leaks, leave the dangerous area immediately and call the fire telephone. Be sure to inform the rescuers that this is a hybrid vehicle, and deliver the onboard rescue information card to the rescuers.

1. RESCUE INFORMATION

WARNING

High voltage battery liquid leakage caused by collision can only be operated by professional rescuers who wear protective mask and solvent-isolation gloves. Do not touch liquid directly.

Vehicle cutting area

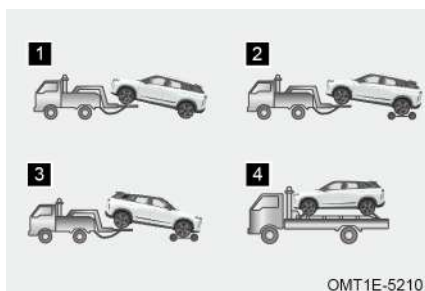
Vehicle pillar uses cast aluminum alloy to protect personal safety. If it is necessary to cut during rescue, proper tools should be used. It is forbidden to cut the high temperature and high voltage areas of the vehicle.

WARNING

When cutting the vehicle, professional rescuers must use appropriate tools such as hydraulic cutter etc. and wear appropriate personal protective device to avoid serious personal injuries.

Towing Vehicle

Correct towing methods



1 For front-wheel drive vehicles: Tow with a wheel lift-type truck from front, and secure the vehicle firmly.

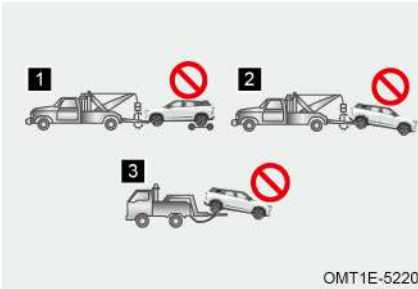
2 For front-wheel drive and 4WD vehicles: When towing with a wheel lift-type truck from front, use a towing dolly under the rear wheels, and secure the vehicle firmly.

3 For front-wheel drive and 4WD vehicles: When towing with a wheel lift-type truck from behind, use a towing dolly under the front wheels, and secure the vehicle firmly.

4 For front-wheel drive and 4WD vehicles: When towing with a flatbed truck, secure the vehicle firmly.

CAUTION

- It is recommended to use flatbed truck for 4WD vehicles.
- Use a flatbed truck if the vehicle's wheels or axles are damaged.
- Ensure that there is a proper clearance between the wheels not lifted and ground. Otherwise, the bumper and chassis of the towed vehicle will be damaged during towing.

Wrong towing methods

- 1** Tow with sling-type truck from front of the vehicle.
- 2** Tow with sling-type truck from rear of the vehicle while front wheels are on the ground.
- 3** Tow with wheel lift-type truck from rear of the vehicle while front wheels are on the ground.

⚠ CAUTION

Do not tow with a sling-type truck to prevent body damage.